

# Service Dynamics

Resource Management  
Extended Monitoring

Zenoss, Inc.

[www.zenoss.com](http://www.zenoss.com)

---

## **Zenoss Service Dynamics Resource Management Extended Monitoring**

Copyright © 2012 Zenoss, Inc., 275 West St. Suite 204, Annapolis, MD 21401, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Zenoss and the Zenoss logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Zenoss, Inc. in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks, logos, and service marks are the property of Zenoss or other third parties. Use of these marks is prohibited without the express written consent of Zenoss, Inc. or the third-party owner.

Amazon Web Services, AWS, Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud, and Amazon EC2 are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

Flash is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Oracle, the Oracle logo, MySQL, and Java are registered trademarks of the Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

SNMP Informant is a trademark of Garth K. Williams (Informant Systems, Inc.).

Sybase is a registered trademark of Sybase, Inc.

Tomcat is a trademark of the Apache Software Foundation.

VMware is a registered trademark or trademark of VMware, Inc. in the United States and/or other jurisdictions.

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

All other companies and products mentioned are trademarks and property of their respective owners.

Part Number: 27-102012-4.2-v02

---

---

1. Advanced Search .....	1
1.1. About .....	1
1.1.1. Working with Saved Searches .....	2
1.2. Prerequisites .....	2
2. AIX .....	3
2.1. About .....	3
2.2. Prerequisites .....	3
2.3. Add an AIX Server .....	3
2.4. Set AIX Server Monitoring Credentials .....	4
2.5. Resolving <code>CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE</code> Issues .....	4
2.6. Resolving <code>Command timed out</code> Issues .....	5
2.7. Daemons .....	5
3. Amazon Web Services .....	6
3.1. About .....	6
3.2. Prerequisites .....	6
3.3. Setup .....	6
3.4. Working with the EC2Manager Account .....	8
3.4.1. CloudWatch Data .....	8
3.4.2. Templates and Collection .....	8
3.4.2.1. Example: Initiating Load-Based Elasticity for an EC2 Setup .....	9
4. Apache Tomcat Application Server .....	10
4.1. About .....	10
4.2. Prerequisites .....	10
4.3. Enable Monitoring .....	11
4.3.1. Configuring Tomcat to Allow JMX Queries .....	11
4.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	11
4.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed .....	12
4.5. Viewing Raw Data .....	12
4.6. Daemons .....	13
5. Apache Web Server .....	14
5.1. About .....	14
5.2. Prerequisites .....	14
5.3. Enable Monitoring .....	14
5.3.1. Display the Status Page in Apache Version 1.3 or Higher .....	14
5.3.2. Display the Status Page in Apache Version 2.x .....	15
5.3.3. Verifying Your Apache Configuration .....	16
5.3.4. Configure Resource Manager to Monitor the Web Server .....	17
5.4. Daemons .....	17
6. WebLogic Application Server .....	18
6.1. About .....	18
6.1.1. Overall Application Server Vitals .....	18
6.1.2. Entity EJB, Message Driven Bean (MDB), and Session EJB Subsystem Metrics .....	18
6.1.3. Data Pool (JDBC) metrics .....	18
6.1.4. Queue (JMS) Metrics .....	18
6.2. Prerequisites .....	19
6.3. Enable Monitoring .....	19
6.3.1. Configuring WebLogic to Allow JMX Queries .....	19
6.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	19
6.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed .....	20
6.5. Viewing Raw Data .....	20
6.6. Monitor SSL-Proxied WebLogic Servers .....	21
6.7. Daemons .....	21
7. BIG-IP Network Devices .....	22
7.1. About .....	22
7.2. Prerequisites .....	22
7.3. Enable Monitoring .....	22
7.4. Viewing Virtual Servers .....	23
7.5. Daemons .....	23

---

8. Brocade SAN Switches .....	24
8.1. About .....	24
8.2. Prerequisites .....	24
8.3. Enable Monitoring .....	24
8.3.1. Configuring Brocade Devices to Allow SNMP Queries .....	24
8.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	24
8.4. Viewing Fibre Channel Port Information .....	24
8.5. Daemons .....	25
9. CheckPoint Firewalls .....	26
9.1. About .....	26
9.2. Prerequisites .....	26
9.3. Enable Monitoring .....	26
9.3.1. Configuring CheckPoint Firewalls to Allow SNMP Queries .....	26
9.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	26
9.4. Daemons .....	27
10. Cisco Devices .....	28
10.1. About .....	28
10.1.1. Features .....	28
10.1.1.1. Supported Common Features .....	28
10.1.1.2. Supported Discovery and Modeling .....	29
10.1.2. Prerequisites .....	29
10.1.3. Firewall Access .....	30
10.1.4. Limitations .....	30
10.1.5. Installation .....	30
10.1.6. Configuration .....	31
10.1.6.1. Choosing the Correct Device Class .....	31
10.1.6.2. Configuring Credentials .....	32
10.1.7. Monitoring Logical Contexts .....	33
10.1.8. Removing the ZenPack .....	33
11. Cisco UCS .....	34
11.1. About .....	34
11.2. Prerequisites .....	34
11.3. Adding a Cisco UCS Device for Monitoring .....	34
11.4. UCS Monitoring Credentials .....	35
11.5. Daemons .....	35
12. Datacenter View .....	36
12.1. About .....	36
12.2. Prerequisites .....	36
12.3. Working with the List View .....	37
12.4. Working with the Custom View .....	37
12.4.1. Adding a Background Image to the Custom View .....	37
12.4.1.1. Removing the Custom View Background Image .....	38
12.4.2. Working with Devices in the Custom View .....	38
12.4.3. Removing the Custom View .....	38
12.5. Activating the Auto-Generated Rack View .....	38
13. Dell Hardware .....	40
13.1. About .....	40
13.2. Prerequisites .....	40
13.3. Enable Enhanced Modeling .....	40
13.4. Daemons .....	40
14. Device Access Control Lists .....	42
14.1. About .....	42
14.2. Prerequisites .....	42
14.3. Key Concepts .....	42
14.3.1. Permissions and Roles .....	42
14.3.2. Administered Objects .....	42
14.3.3. Users and Groups .....	42
14.3.4. Assigning Administered Object Access .....	42

14.3.5. Restricted Screen Functionality .....	43
14.3.5.1. Dashboard .....	43
14.3.5.2. Device List .....	43
14.3.5.3. Device Organizers .....	43
14.3.5.4. Reporting .....	43
14.3.5.5. Viewing Events .....	43
14.4. Create a User Restricted to Specific Devices .....	43
14.5. Create a Manager Restricted to Specific Devices .....	43
14.6. Adding Device Organizers .....	44
14.7. Restricted User Organizer Management .....	44
15. Distributed Collector .....	45
15.1. About Distributed Collector .....	45
15.1.1. About Collectors .....	45
15.1.2. About Hubs .....	45
15.1.3. Typical Usage Scenarios for Distributed Monitoring .....	45
15.1.4. Prerequisites .....	46
15.1.5. Navigating Collectors and Hubs .....	46
15.2. Deploying Collectors .....	47
15.2.1. Installing Prerequisites .....	47
15.2.1.1. Installing RRDtool .....	47
15.2.1.2. Installing Additional Required Packages .....	48
15.2.2. Deploying Remote Collectors .....	48
15.2.2.1. Requirements .....	48
15.2.2.2. Limitations .....	49
15.2.2.3. Overriding Daemons on Remote Collectors .....	49
15.2.2.4. Deployment .....	49
15.2.3. Deploying Local Collectors .....	53
15.3. Updating Collectors .....	54
15.3.1. Using nginx as a Reverse Proxy .....	54
15.4. Backing Up Remote Collector Performance Data .....	54
15.5. Configuring Collector Data Storage .....	54
15.6. Deleting Collectors .....	55
15.7. Adding Devices to Collectors .....	55
15.7.1. Moving Devices Between Collectors .....	55
15.7.1.1. Moving Performance Data Between Collectors .....	55
15.8. Managing Collector Daemons .....	55
15.9. Deploying Hubs .....	56
15.9.1. Install Prerequisites .....	56
15.9.1.1. Installing the Zenoss DataStore .....	56
15.9.1.2. Installing RRDtool .....	56
15.9.1.3. Installing Additional Required Packages .....	57
15.9.2. Deploying Remote Hubs .....	57
15.9.2.1. Requirements .....	57
15.9.2.2. Limitations .....	57
15.9.2.3. Configuring Zenoss DataStore for Remote Hubs .....	58
15.9.2.4. Deployment .....	58
15.9.3. Setting Up SSH Keys for Distributed Collector .....	61
15.9.4. Moving a Collector to a New Hub .....	62
16. Domain Name System .....	63
16.1. About .....	63
16.2. DigMonitor .....	63
16.2.1. Prerequisites .....	63
16.2.2. Enable Monitoring .....	63
16.3. DNSMonitor .....	63
16.3.1. Prerequisites .....	64
16.3.2. Enable Monitoring .....	64
16.4. Daemons .....	64
17. Dynamic Service View .....	65

17.1. About .....	65
17.1.1. Dynamic View of Organizers .....	66
17.1.2. Dynamic View of Devices .....	67
17.1.2.1. Dynamic View of Cisco UCS Devices .....	67
17.1.2.2. Dynamic View of VMware Hosts .....	67
17.1.2.3. Dynamic View of Storage Devices .....	67
17.2. Prerequisites .....	67
17.3. Enabling .....	67
17.4. Daemons .....	67
18. Enterprise Collector .....	68
18.1. About .....	68
18.1.1. ZenHub Configuration Options .....	68
18.2. Prerequisites .....	69
18.3. Enabling Enterprise Collector .....	69
19. Enterprise Linux .....	70
19.1. About .....	70
19.2. Prerequisites .....	70
19.3. Add a Linux Server .....	70
19.4. Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials .....	70
19.5. Resolving CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE Issues .....	71
19.6. Resolving Command timed out Issues .....	71
19.7. DMIDECODE Modeler Plugin .....	72
19.8. Daemons .....	72
20. Enterprise Reports .....	73
20.1. About .....	73
20.1.1. Organizer Availability .....	73
20.1.2. 95th Percentile .....	73
20.1.3. Users Group Membership .....	74
20.1.4. Maintenance Windows .....	74
20.1.5. Interface Volume .....	74
20.1.6. Event Time to Resolution .....	74
20.1.7. User Event Activity .....	74
20.1.8. Datapoints Per Collector .....	74
20.1.9. Defined Thresholds .....	74
20.1.10. Network Topology .....	74
20.2. Viewing Enterprise Reports .....	75
20.3. Prerequisites .....	75
21. Enterprise Security .....	76
21.1. About .....	76
21.2. Prerequisites .....	76
21.3. Enabling Password Encryption .....	76
22. File Transfer Protocol .....	77
22.1. About .....	77
22.2. Prerequisites .....	77
22.3. Enable Monitoring .....	77
22.4. Enable Secure Site Monitoring .....	77
22.5. Tuning for Site Responsiveness .....	78
22.6. Daemons .....	78
23. Foundry Device .....	79
23.1. About .....	79
23.2. Prerequisites .....	79
23.3. Configuring Resource Manager .....	79
23.4. Daemons .....	80
24. HP PC Hardware .....	81
24.1. About .....	81
24.2. Prerequisites .....	81
24.3. Enable Enhanced Modeling .....	81
24.4. Daemons .....	81

25. Hewlett Packard UNIX .....	82
25.1. About .....	82
25.2. Prerequisites .....	82
25.3. Limitations .....	82
25.4. Add an HP-UX Device for Monitoring .....	82
25.5. Set HP-UX Server Monitoring Credentials .....	83
25.5.1. Set Credentials for the Device .....	83
25.5.2. Set Credentials for the Device Class .....	83
25.6. Resolving CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE Issues .....	83
25.7. Resolving Command time out Issues .....	84
25.8. Daemons .....	84
26. Internet Relay Chat (IRC) .....	85
26.1. About .....	85
26.2. Prerequisites .....	85
26.3. Enable Monitoring .....	85
26.4. Daemons .....	85
27. Jabber Instant Messaging .....	86
27.1. About .....	86
27.2. Prerequisites .....	86
27.3. Enable Monitoring .....	86
27.4. Daemons .....	86
28. Java 2 Platform Standard Edition .....	87
28.1. About .....	87
28.1.1. JMX Background .....	87
28.1.2. ZenJMX Capabilities .....	87
28.1.3. Allowable Parameter Types .....	88
28.1.4. Single Value Attribute Calls .....	88
28.1.5. Complex-Value Attribute Calls .....	89
28.1.6. Example Method Calls .....	89
28.1.6.1. No parameters, single return value .....	89
28.1.6.2. No parameters, multiple values returned in List format .....	89
28.1.6.3. No parameters, multiple values returned in Map format .....	90
28.1.6.4. Single parameter in polymorphic operation .....	90
28.1.6.5. Multiple parameters in polymorphic operations .....	91
28.1.7. Special Service URLs .....	91
28.2. Prerequisites .....	92
28.2.1. Oracle Java Runtime Environment (JRE) .....	92
28.3. Example to Monitor a JMX Value .....	92
28.3.1. Enabling Remote JMX Access .....	92
28.3.2. Configure Resource Manager with a Custom Data Source .....	93
28.4. Monitor Values in TabularData and CompositeData Objects .....	94
28.5. Using <b>JConsole</b> to Query a JMX Agent .....	94
28.6. ZenJMX Options .....	98
28.7. Memory Allocation .....	98
28.8. ZenJMX Logging .....	98
28.9. Daemons .....	98
29. JBoss Application Server .....	99
29.1. About .....	99
29.2. Prerequisites .....	100
29.3. Enable Monitoring .....	100
29.3.1. Configuring JBoss to Allow JMX Queries .....	100
29.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	100
29.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed .....	101
29.5. Viewing Raw Data .....	101
29.6. Daemons .....	102
30. Juniper Devices .....	103
30.1. About .....	103
30.2. Prerequisites .....	103

30.3. Enable Monitoring .....	103
30.3.1. Configuring Juniper Devices to Allow SNMP Queries .....	103
30.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	103
30.4. Daemons .....	104
31. LDAP Authentication .....	105
31.1. About .....	105
31.2. Prerequisites .....	105
31.2.1. LDAP Configuration Information .....	105
31.3. Configuring LDAP Authentication .....	105
31.4. Advanced Tasks .....	108
31.4.1. Verifying Connectivity and Credentials Outside of Resource Manager .....	108
31.4.2. Configuring Local Authentication as a Fallback .....	108
32. Lightweight Directory Access Protocol Response Time .....	110
32.1. About .....	110
32.2. Prerequisites .....	110
32.3. Enable Monitoring .....	110
32.3.1. For a Device .....	110
32.4. Daemons .....	111
33. Mail Transactions .....	112
33.1. About .....	112
33.1.1. Events .....	112
33.2. Prerequisites .....	112
33.3. Enable Monitoring .....	112
33.4. Daemons .....	113
34. Active Directory .....	114
34.1. About .....	114
34.2. Prerequisites .....	114
34.3. Enable Monitoring .....	114
34.4. Daemons .....	115
35. MS Exchange .....	116
35.1. About .....	116
35.2. Prerequisites .....	116
35.3. Enable Monitoring .....	116
35.4. Daemons .....	116
36. Microsoft Message Queuing (MSMQ) Monitoring .....	117
36.1. About .....	117
36.2. Prerequisites .....	117
36.3. Configuration .....	117
36.3.1. Automatically Monitor Queues on All Servers .....	117
36.3.2. Monitor Queues on Specific Servers .....	117
36.3.3. Fine-Tuning Queue Monitoring .....	118
36.4. Daemons .....	118
37. Microsoft Internet Information Services .....	119
37.1. About .....	119
37.2. Prerequisites .....	119
37.3. Enable Monitoring .....	119
37.4. Daemons .....	120
38. Microsoft SQL Server .....	121
38.1. About .....	121
38.2. Prerequisites .....	121
38.3. Enable Monitoring .....	121
38.4. Collecting Information from Non-Default Microsoft SQL Server Instances .....	121
38.5. Daemons .....	122
39. Multi-Realm IP Networks .....	123
39.1. About .....	123
39.2. Prerequisites .....	123
39.3. Example System .....	123
39.4. System Setup .....	124



39.4.1. Adding Realms .....	124
39.4.2. Adding Collectors to Realms .....	124
39.4.3. Adding Devices to Realms .....	125
39.5. Notes .....	125
40. MySQL Database .....	126
40.1. About .....	126
40.2. Prerequisites .....	126
40.3. Enable Monitoring .....	126
40.3.1. Authorize MySQL Performance Data Access .....	126
40.3.2. Set up Resource Manager .....	126
40.4. Daemons .....	127
41. NetApp Filers .....	128
41.1. About .....	128
41.1.1. Performance Graphs .....	128
41.2. Prerequisites .....	129
41.3. Enable Monitoring .....	129
41.3.1. Configuring NetApp Devices to Allow SNMP Queries .....	129
41.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	129
41.4. Using SSH to Model NFS Clients .....	129
41.5. Forwarding syslog Events from NetApp .....	130
41.6. Daemons .....	130
42. NetScreen Devices .....	131
42.1. About .....	131
42.2. Prerequisites .....	131
42.3. Enable Monitoring .....	131
42.3.1. Configuring NetScreen Devices to Allow SNMP Queries .....	131
42.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	131
42.4. Daemons .....	132
43. Network News Transport Protocol (NNTP) .....	133
43.1. About .....	133
43.2. Enable Monitoring .....	133
43.3. Daemons .....	133
44. Network Time Protocol .....	134
44.1. About .....	134
44.2. Prerequisites .....	134
44.3. Enable Monitoring .....	134
44.4. Daemons .....	134
45. Nortel Devices .....	135
45.1. About .....	135
45.2. Prerequisites .....	135
45.3. Enable Monitoring .....	135
45.3.1. Configuring Nortel Devices to Allow SNMP Queries .....	135
45.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager .....	135
45.4. Daemons .....	136
46. ONC-Style Remote Procedure Call (RPC) .....	137
46.1. About .....	137
46.2. Prerequisites .....	137
46.3. Enable Monitoring .....	137
46.4. Daemons .....	137
47. Oracle .....	138
47.1. About .....	138
47.2. Prerequisites .....	138
47.3. Enable Monitoring .....	138
47.3.1. Authorize Oracle Performance Data Access .....	138
47.3.2. Configure Resource Manager .....	138
47.4. Monitor Additional SIDs .....	139
47.5. Monitoring Other Tables or Views .....	139
47.6. Daemons .....	140

48. Predictive Thresholding .....	141
48.1. About .....	141
48.2. Prerequisites .....	141
48.3. Add a Predictive Threshold .....	141
49. RANCID Integration .....	142
49.1. About .....	142
49.2. Prerequisites .....	142
49.3. Enable Integration .....	142
49.3.1. Configure Cisco Devices to Send Traps .....	142
49.3.2. Configure RANCID Update Information in Resource Manager .....	142
50. Solaris .....	144
50.1. About .....	144
50.2. Prerequisites .....	144
50.3. Limitations .....	144
50.4. Set Solaris Server Monitoring Credentials .....	144
50.5. Enable Monitoring .....	145
50.5.1. Enabling SSH Monitoring .....	145
50.5.2. Enabling SNMP Monitoring .....	145
50.5.3. Enabling LDOM Monitoring .....	146
50.6. Resolving CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE Issues .....	146
50.7. Resolving Command time out Issues .....	146
50.8. Removal .....	147
50.9. Daemons .....	147
51. Splunk Monitoring .....	148
51.1. About .....	148
51.2. Prerequisites .....	148
51.3. Splunk Data Source Type .....	148
51.4. Monitoring Splunk Searches .....	149
51.4.1. Monitoring Results of a Simple Search .....	149
51.4.2. Monitoring Results of a Top Search .....	151
51.5. Daemons .....	152
52. SSH Monitoring Example .....	153
52.1. About .....	153
52.2. Prerequisites .....	153
52.3. Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials .....	153
52.4. Add a Linux Server .....	153
52.5. Daemons .....	154
53. SQL Transactions .....	155
53.1. About .....	155
53.2. Prerequisites .....	155
53.3. Enable SQL Server Monitoring .....	155
53.4. Enable Sybase Server Monitoring .....	156
53.5. Enable MySQL Server Monitoring .....	157
53.6. Storing Query Results .....	158
53.7. Troubleshooting .....	158
53.8. Daemons .....	159
54. Storage Base .....	160
54.1. About .....	160
54.2. Prerequisites .....	160
55. Sugar CRM .....	161
55.1. About .....	161
55.2. Prerequisites .....	161
55.3. Enable Monitoring .....	161
55.3.1. Configuring Resource Manager .....	161
55.4. Daemons .....	162
56. vCloud Monitoring .....	163
56.1. About .....	163
56.2. Adding a Cell .....	163

56.3. Prerequisites .....	164
56.4. Monitoring .....	164
56.5. Performance .....	165
57. VMware .....	166
57.1. vSphere .....	166
57.1.1. About .....	166
57.1.1.1. VMware Events .....	166
57.1.2. Prerequisites .....	168
57.1.3. Enable Monitoring .....	168
57.1.4. Viewing VMware Devices .....	169
57.1.5. Viewing Guest Virtual Machines .....	169
57.1.6. Enabling Data Collection Using resxtop .....	170
57.1.6.1. Gathering VMware Host Statistics .....	170
57.1.6.2. Gathering VMware Guest Statistics .....	171
57.1.7. Adding a Custom Metric .....	171
57.1.8. Moving VMware Devices Between Collectors .....	172
57.1.9. Daemons .....	173
57.1.9.1. Tuning Options .....	173
57.2. VMware ESX via SNMP .....	173
57.2.1. About .....	174
57.2.2. Monitoring VMware ESX Servers .....	174
57.2.3. Enabling SNMP Subagents .....	174
57.2.4. Daemons .....	175
57.3. VMware esxtop .....	175
57.3.1. About .....	175
57.3.2. Prerequisites .....	175
57.3.2.1. Installing Prerequisite Libraries .....	175
57.3.3. Enabling the ZenPack .....	176
57.3.4. Daemons .....	176
58. Web Page Response Time .....	177
58.1. About .....	177
58.2. Prerequisites .....	177
58.3. Enable Monitoring .....	177
58.4. Check for a Specific URL or Specify Security Settings .....	177
58.5. Check for Specific Content on the Web Page .....	178
58.6. Tuning for Site Responsiveness .....	178
58.7. Daemons .....	179
59. WebSphere Application Server .....	180
59.1. About .....	180
59.2. Prerequisites .....	180
59.3. Enable Monitoring .....	180
59.3.1. Configure WAS for Monitoring .....	180
59.3.2. Configure Resource Manager .....	180
59.4. Examples .....	181
59.5. Daemons .....	182
60. Xen Virtual Hosts .....	183
60.1. About .....	183
60.2. Prerequisites .....	183
60.3. Model Hosts and Guest .....	183
60.4. Daemons .....	183
61. zenwebserver .....	184
61.1. About .....	184
61.2. Prerequisites .....	184
61.3. Installation .....	184
61.4. Usage .....	184
61.4.1. Arguments .....	184
61.4.2. Options .....	185
61.4.3. Targets .....	185

61.4.4. Command Use and Examples .....	185
61.4.5. Configuring the Load Balancer .....	186
62. Web-Based Synthetic Transactions .....	187
62.1. About .....	187
62.1.1. Data Points .....	187
62.1.2. Event Generation .....	187
62.2. Prerequisites .....	188
62.3. Enable Monitoring .....	188
62.4. Creating twill Commands .....	189
62.4.1. Creating twill Commands from TestGen4Web .....	190
62.4.2. Creating twill Commands Manually .....	190
62.5. Monitoring through Proxy Servers .....	190
62.5.1. Example Proxy Setup .....	191
62.5.2. Testing the Proxy Setup .....	191
62.6. Daemons .....	191
63. Windows Performance .....	192
63.1. About .....	192
63.2. Prerequisites .....	192
63.3. Enable Monitoring .....	192
63.3.1. Defining Windows Credentials .....	192
63.3.2. Add Devices in Resource Manager .....	193
63.4. Monitor Other Performance Counters .....	193
63.5. Testing Connections from Windows .....	193
63.6. Testing Connections from Resource Manager .....	194
63.7. Modify Registry Settings for Firewalls in Secure Environments .....	194
63.8. Configuring a Standalone Windows Device for a Non-Administrative Account .....	194
63.9. Tuning Collector Daemon Performance .....	198
63.10. Multiple Workers .....	198
63.11. Enabling the NTLMv2 Authentication Protocol .....	198
64. ZenOperator Role .....	199
64.1. About .....	199
64.2. Prerequisites .....	199
65. ZenTune .....	200
65.1. About .....	200
65.2. Prerequisites .....	200
65.3. Configuring ZenTune .....	200
65.3.1. Configuring ZenTune for Remote Databases .....	200
65.4. Using ZenTune .....	200
65.4.1. Running ZenTune from the Command Line .....	201
65.5. Tuneable Items .....	202
65.6. Daemons .....	208
A. twill Commands Reference .....	209
A.1. About .....	209
A.2. Browsing .....	209
A.3. Assertions .....	209
A.4. Display .....	209
A.5. Forms .....	210
A.6. Cookies .....	210
A.7. Debugging .....	210
A.8. Other Commands .....	210
A.9. Details on Form Handling .....	211
A.10. ZenWebTx Extensions to twill .....	212
A.10.1. twilltiming .....	212
A.10.2. twillextract .....	213
A.10.3. twillxpathextract .....	213
A.10.4. ignorescripts .....	213

# Chapter 1. Advanced Search

## 1.1. About

The AdvancedSearch ZenPack enables the advanced search facility in the user interface. This tool allows you to locate devices and other system objects, as well as events and services.

When enabled, advanced search appears adjacent to the user information area.

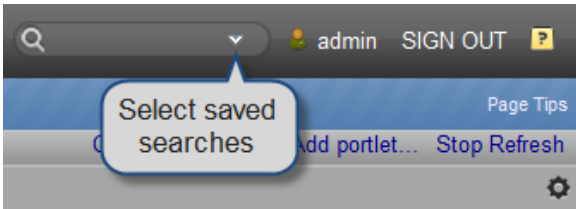


Figure 1.1. Advanced Search (User Information Area)

To search, enter part or all of a name in the search box. The system displays matches, categorized by type.

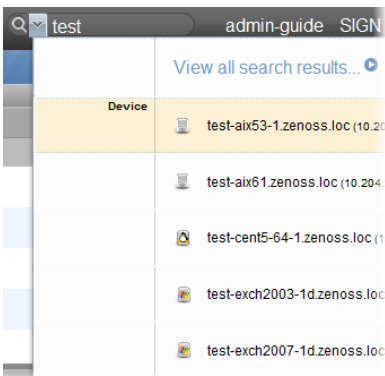


Figure 1.2. Search Results

To view all search results, click the indicator at the top of the list. The full list of results appears.

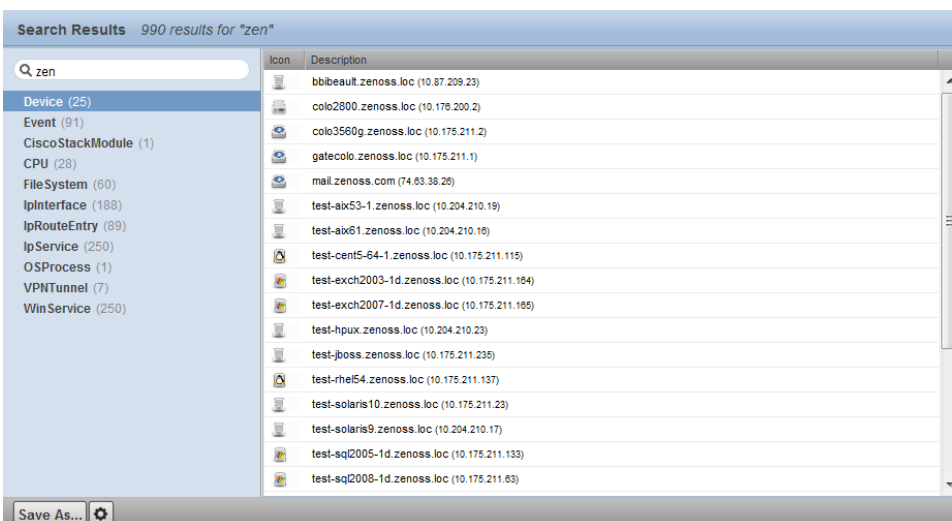


Figure 1.3. All Search Results

From here, you can display search results by category. Click in the left panel to filter search results by a selection.

### 1.1.1. Working with Saved Searches

To save a search:

1. Click **Save As**.

the Save Search As dialog appears.

2. Enter a name for the saved search, and then click **Submit**.

To retrieve a saved search, select it from the search box menu.

You also can manage saved searches. Access all saved searches from two locations:

- Search box menu
- Action menu located at the bottom of the Search Results page

The Manage Saved Searches dialog lets you view the queries associated with saved searches and delete saved searches.

## 1.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 3.0 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.AdvancedSearch

Table 1.1. Prerequisites

---

# Chapter 2. AIX

## 2.1. About

The AixMonitor ZenPack enables Resource Manager to use Secure Shell (SSH) to monitor AIX hosts. Resource Manager models and monitors devices placed in the `/Server/SSH/AIX` device class by running commands and parsing the output. Parsing of command output is performed on the Resource Manager server or on a distributed collector. The account used to monitor the device does not require root access or special privileges.

Specifically, the AixMonitor ZenPack provides:

- File system and process monitoring
- Network interfaces and route modeling
- CPU utilization information
- Hardware information (memory, number of CPUs, machine serial numbers, model numbers)
- OS information (OS level command style information)
- LPP and RPM information (such as installed software)

## 2.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.4 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.AixMonitor
AIX Releases Supported	5.3 and 6.1

Table 2.1. AIX Prerequisites

### Note

If using a distributed collector setup, SSH requires firewall access (default of port 22) from the collector to the monitored server.

## 2.3. Add an AIX Server

The following procedure assumes that the credentials have been set.

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, select Add a Single Device.
2. Enter the following information in the dialog:

Name	Description
Name or IP	AIX host to model
Device Class	<code>/Server/SSH/AIX</code>
Model Device	Select this option unless adding a device with username/password different than found in the device class. If you do not select this option, then you must add the credentials (see Section 2.4, "Set AIX Server Monitoring Credentials") and then manually model the device.

Table 2.2. Adding AIX Device Information

3. Click **Add Device** to add the device.

## 2.4. Set AIX Server Monitoring Credentials

All AIX servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/SSH/AIX` device class.

### Note

The SSH monitoring feature will attempt to use key-based authentication before using a configuration properties password value.

1. Navigate to the device class or device.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zCommandUsername	AIX user with privileges to gather performance information
zCommandPassword	Password for the AIX user

Table 2.3. AIX Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

## 2.5. Resolving CHANNEL\_OPEN\_FAILURE Issues

The **zencommand** daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
ERROR zen.SshClient CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE: Authentication failure
WARNING:zen.SshClient:Open of command failed (error code 1): open failed
```

If the **sshd** daemon's log file on the remote device is examined, it may report that the `MAX_SESSIONS` number of connections has been exceeded and that it is denying the connection request. At least in the OpenSSH daemons, this `MAX_SESSIONS` number is a compile-time option and cannot be reset in a configuration file.

To work around this limitation of the **sshd** daemon, use the configuration property `zSshConcurrentSessions` to control the number of connections created by **zencommand** to the remote device.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the maximum number of sessions.



Name	Description
zSshConcurrentSessions	Maximum number of sessions supported by the remote device's <code>MAX_SESSIONS</code> parameter. Common values for AIX is 2 or 10.

Table 2.4. Concurrent SSH Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 2.6. Resolving `Command timed out` Issues

The `zencommand` daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
WARNING:zen.zencommand:Command timed out on device device_name: command
```

If this occurs, it usually indicates that the remote device has taken too long in order to return results from the commands. In order to increase the amount of time to allow devices to return results, change the configuration property `zCommandCommandTimeout` to a larger value.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the command timeout.

Name	Description
zCommandCommandTimeout	Time in seconds to wait for commands to complete on the remote device.

Table 2.5. SSH Timeout Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 2.7. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<code>zenmodeler</code>
Performance Collector	<code>zencommand</code>

Table 2.6. Daemons

---

# Chapter 3. Amazon Web Services

## 3.1. About

The Amazon Web Services™ ZenPack allows you to monitor Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud™ (Amazon EC2™) server instances. It collects information for these objects monitored through Amazon's CloudWatch APIs:

- Account
- Instance
- Instance Type

When you install the ZenPack, the `/AWS/EC2` device class is added to your Resource Manager instance. A single device in the EC2 class, `EC2Manager`, represents your EC2 account. All instances and instance types are contained in the EC2 account manager.

## 3.2. Prerequisites

You must have a valid Amazon Web Services account with the Elastic Compute Cloud service enabled.

Modeling and performance requests to Amazon are sent via XML over http or https. You must open port 80, port 443, or both on your Resource Manager server so that requests can be sent to Amazon's infrastructure through the Internet.

The Resource Manager server time must be correct; otherwise, no performance data will be returned.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenAWS

Table 3.1. Prerequisites

## 3.3. Setup

To set up the EC2 account manager in Resource Manager, follow these steps:

1. Retrieve your Amazon EC2 access credentials.
  - a. Browse to <http://aws.amazon.com>.
  - b. Select **Security Credentials** from the **Your Account** list of options.

The Access Key ID and Secret Access Key values appear on the Access Keys tab.

## Access Credentials

In order to start using Amazon Web Services you must first identify yourself as the sender of a request to the given service. This is accomplished by sending a digital signature that is derived from a pair of public/private access keys or a valid security certificate.

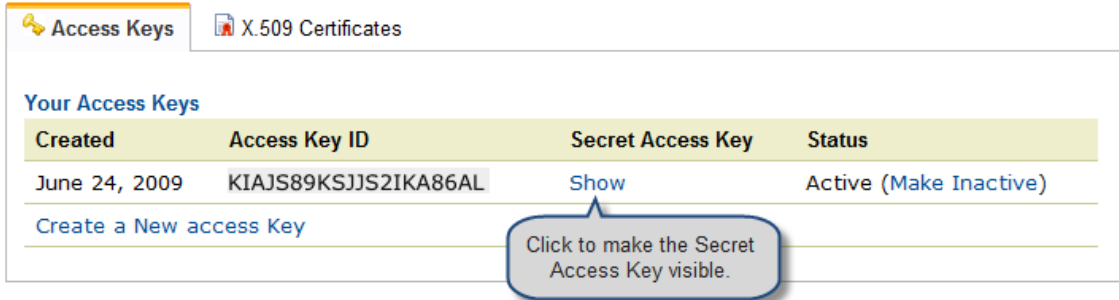


Figure 3.1. Access Credentials

2. In the Resource Manager interface, select Infrastructure, and then select the EC2Manager device in the device list.
3. Select Configure EC2 in the left panel.

The Configure EC2 page appears.

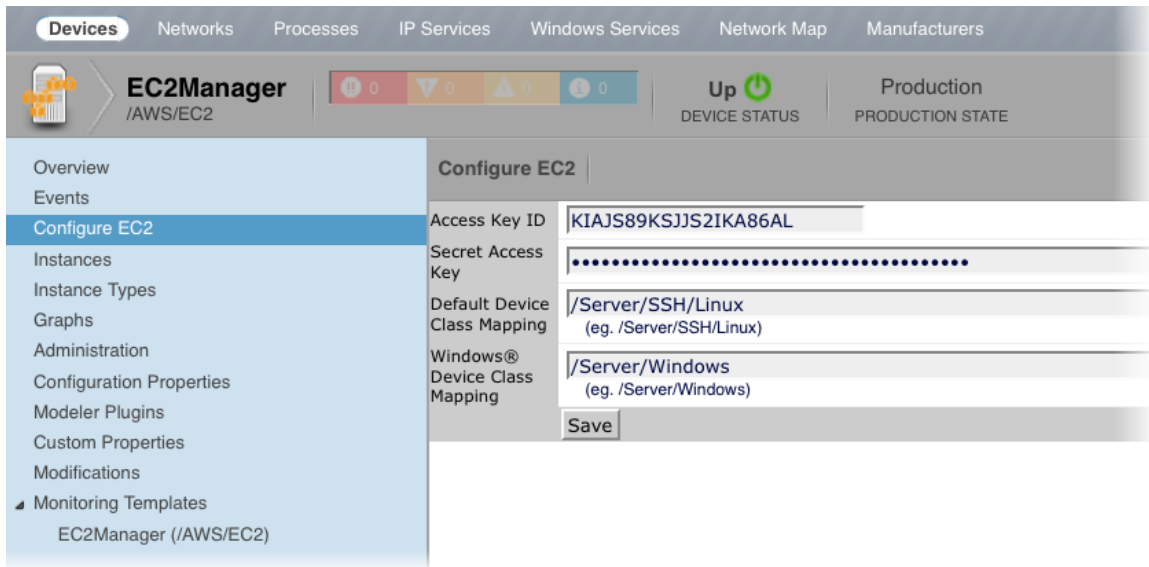


Figure 3.2. Configure EC2

4. Enter access credentials.

### Note

Entering a class for the Device Mapping field allows the system to monitor an EC2 instance as a normal device. If no class is specified, then the instances are monitoring within EC2Manager only.

5. Model the EC2Manager account to retrieve the Instance and InstanceType objects. From the Action menu, select Model Device.

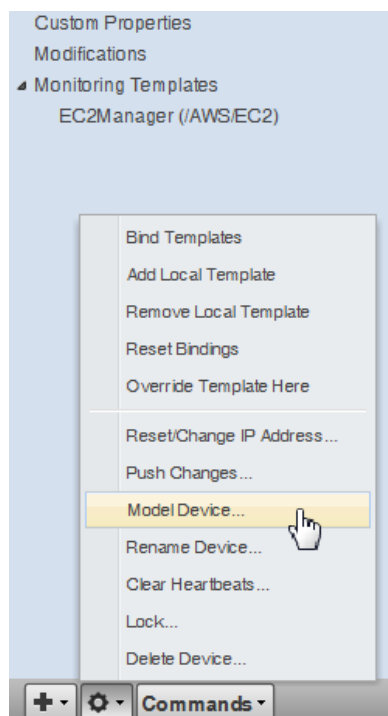


Figure 3.3. Model EC2Manager Account

## 3.4. Working with the EC2Manager Account

Select Infrastructure, and then select the EC2Manager account in the device list. Select Instances in the left panel to see each instance that is active in your Amazon EC2 account. Click an instance to view detailed information

The Instance Type field is a link to a type object that references all instances of a particular type.

### 3.4.1. CloudWatch Data

Amazon provides monitoring information through its CloudWatch APIs. These APIs provide monitoring information for each of their primary objects (Account, Instance, and Instance Type).

Metrics provided by the API are:

- CPU utilization
- Network in/out
- Disk bytes read/write
- Disk operations read/write

The metrics for an instance apply directly for the instances; for example, if an instance shows 100% CPU utilization, then its CPU is at maximum. However, for an instance type, 100% CPU utilization means that all instances within that type are at 100% CPU utilization. The same is true for the account; metrics are summed for all instances.

Resource Manager collects monitoring information for the Account, Instance, and Instance Type objects. Account information appears on the Perf tab. Instance and Instance Type information appears on their main screens.

### 3.4.2. Templates and Collection

Resource Manager uses the standard monitoring template system to configure EC2 Manager accounts. Each template relies on a custom ZenCommand, `zencw2`, that polls the CloudWatch API and returns all available pa-

parameters. These parameters are used by their associated graphs. You can set thresholds against the parameters.

Templates for each primary object type are defined in the `/AWS/EC2` class.

Object Type	Template
Account	EC2Manager
Instance	EC2Instance
Instance Type	EC2InstanceType

Table 3.2. Primary Object Type Templates

### 3.4.2.1. Example: Initiating Load-Based Elasticity for an EC2 Setup

Suppose you want to use Resource Manager to initiate load-based elasticity for your EC2 setup. For example, each time the account CPU exceeds 80%, you want Resource Manager to create a new instance. To set up this scenario, you would first set up and model your account. Then, you would follow these steps:

1. Select the `EC2Manager` device in the `Devices` section of the `Infrastructure` page, and then expand the `Monitoring templates` node at the left of screen and click the `EC2Manager` template.
2. Add a threshold against the `zencw2_CPUUtilization` CPU Utilization data point, and then set its event class to `/Perf/CPU`.

Each time the CPU exceeds the threshold, Resource Manager creates an event with the device name `EC2Manager` in the `/Perf/CPU` class.

3. Create an event command that matches this event, and launch the `EC2` command to create the new instances.

When the event is initiated, the new instances will be created.

#### Note

The `clear` command can be used to shut down unneeded instances.

---

# Chapter 4. Apache Tomcat Application Server

## 4.1. About

The TomcatMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor the Tomcat Application Server. Tomcat is a Web application container that conforms to many parts of the J2EE Specification.

This ZenPack focuses on the metrics that Tomcat updates in its internal MBean container that is accessible via the remote JMX API. These metrics focus on attributes that relate to the servicing of web pages and primarily include thread pool size, CPU use, available file descriptors, JSP and servlet counts, and request counts.

TomcatMonitor places much emphasis on monitoring thread status because every web request is serviced in a separate thread. Each thread requires file descriptors to be maintained, and thus those are monitored as well. The amount of CPU time spent servicing each thread is also captured and reported.

TomcatMonitor also reports on the number of times JSPs and Servlets are reloaded. This metric can be useful in highly dynamic sites where JSPs or Servlets change on the fly and need to be reloaded periodically. Monitoring of this metric can lead to the identification of small "Reloading Storms" before they cause production outages.

The amount of time Tomcat spends servicing a request is also recorded. This extremely high level metric can provide insight into downstream systems that are not monitored. If all the Tomcat resources are within normal tolerances but processing time suddenly spikes it can be an indication that a back-end service (such as a database or another web service) is misbehaving.

The following metrics can be collected and graphed:

- Tomcat cache (accesses vs hits)
- Daemon and User thread count
- Overall CPU time
- Global Request Traffic: bytes sent/received
- Global Request Traffic: request count and error count
- Global Request processing time
- JSP/Servlet reload time
- Servlet class loading and processing time
- Servlet request and error count

### Tip

The more extensive JBoss Application Server uses Tomcat as a Web Application engine to manage web applications deployed inside enterprise applications within JBoss. As a result, the TomcatMonitor ZenPack can be used to monitor Tomcat MBeans that are active within JBoss.

## 4.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenJMX, ZenPacks.zenoss.TomcatMonitor

Table 4.1. Prerequisites

## 4.3. Enable Monitoring

### 4.3.1. Configuring Tomcat to Allow JMX Queries

Before running the Tomcat `bin/start.sh` script, run the following to allow unsecured queries against the Tomcat server:

```
JAVA_OPTS="-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=12346"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=false"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false"
export JAVA_OPTS
```

The same `JAVA_OPTS` approach can be used to enable remote access to Tomcat MBeans. Set the `JAVA_OPTS` variable as illustrated above and then execute the `.catalina.sh start` command in the `${TOMCAT_HOME}/bin` directory.

#### Note

Tomcat 6.0.14's `catalina.sh` does not process the `stop` command properly when the `JAVA_OPTS` variable is set. We recommend using two separate shell scripts when troubleshooting JMX problems in Tomcat: one for starting Tomcat (with the `JAVA_OPTS` variable set) and a different one for stopping Tomcat (where the `JAVA_OPTS` variable is not set).

If you add the above lines to the `bin/setenv.sh` (as seems to be the logical thing to do in `catalina.sh` to get the environment variables set up), the `bin/shutdown.sh` script will get those same environment variables. This will cause the `shutdown.sh` script to attempt to bind to the ports, fail, and then not stop Apache Tomcat.

### 4.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All Apache Tomcat services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/Tomcat` device class.

#### Note

The `zenjmx` daemon must be configured and running. See Section 28.2.1, "Oracle Java Runtime Environment (JRE)" for more information about configuring the `zenjmx` daemon with the Sun JRE tools.

- Navigate to the device or device class under the `/Devices/Server/Tomcat` device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - Click **Details**.
    - Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - Click the device in the device list.
    - Select Configuration Properties.
- Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
<code>zTomcatJ2EEApplicationName</code>	Used to construct MBean names for a specific application deployed on Tomcat, typically used for JSP and Servlet statistics.
<code>zTomcatJ2EEServerName</code>	Used to construct MBean names for a specific application deployed on Tomcat, typically used for JSP and Servlet statistics.
<code>zTomcatJmxManagementAuthenticate</code>	This configuration property is deprecated.
<code>zTomcatJmxManagementPassword</code>	JMX password.
<code>zTomcatJmxManagementPort</code>	The port number used to gather JMX information.

Name	Description
zTomcatJmxManagementUsername	JMX username for authentication.
zTomcatListenHost	The hostname on which Tomcat is listening for web requests. This is used to construct MBean names.
zTomcatListenPort	The Tomcat connector, which is a port and protocol (http, jk...) that Tomcat is listening on. This is used to construct MBean names that monitor bytes, error and requests on that connector.
zTomcatServletName	Specific Servlet name to monitor.
zTomcatServletUri	URI of Servlet to monitor.
zTomcatWebAppUri	URI path for a Tomcat web application. Used to construct MBean names.

Table 4.2. Tomcat Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the Tomcat server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for performance graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

### Tip

The out-of-the-box TomcatMonitor data source configuration has been defined at the macro level, but can be configured to operate on a more granular basis. For example, the Servlet Reload Count applies to all servlets in all web applications but it could be narrowed to be Servlet /submitOrder in web application "production server".

## 4.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed

1. Navigate to the device or device class under the /Devices/Server/Tomcat device class in the Resource Manager interface.
2. From the left panel, select Monitoring Templates.
3. From the Action menu, select Bind Templates.
4. Move one or more templates to Selected, and then click **Save**.

Name	Description
Tomcat Cache	Cache information about a specific Web application deployed.
Tomcat Core	Core information about any Tomcat server: memory usage, threads, uptime, etc.
Tomcat Global Request Processor	Connection information over a Tomcat connector: bytes, errors, requests.
Tomcat JSPS	Metrics about a specific JSP page.
Tomcat Servlet	Metrics about a specific Servlet.
Tomcat Thread Pool	Threadpool metrics measured per Tomcat connector.
Tomcat Web Module	Processing time metrics for a Web module.

Table 4.3. Tomcat Templates

5. Click the OK button to save your changes.

## 4.5. Viewing Raw Data

See Section 28.5, "Using JConsole to Query a JMX Agent" for more information about how to investigate raw data returned from the application.



## 4.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenjmx

*Table 4.4. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 5. Apache Web Server

## 5.1. About

The ApacheMonitor ZenPack provides a method for pulling performance metrics from the Apache Web server directly into Resource Manager, without requiring the use of an agent. This is accomplished by using Apache's `mod_status` module that comes with Apache Version 1 and 2.

The following metrics are collected and graphed for the Apache HTTP server.

- Requests per Second
- Throughput (Bytes/sec and Bytes/request)
- CPU Utilization of the HTTP server and all worker processes or threads
- Slot Usage (Open, Waiting, Reading Request, Sending Reply, Keep-Alive DNS Lookup, and Logging)

## 5.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ApacheMonitor

Table 5.1. Prerequisites

## 5.3. Enable Monitoring

Follow the steps in these sections to:

- Display the status page in Apache Version 1.3 or higher
- Display the status page in Apache Version 2.x
- Configure your configuration
- Configure the system to monitor the Web server

### 5.3.1. Display the Status Page in Apache Version 1.3 or Higher

1. On the Apache server, locate the `httpd.conf` file. Generally, this file is located at `/etc/httpd/httpd.conf` OR `/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf`; however, other locations are possible depending on your operating system and setup.

If you cannot locate the configuration file, use your system's search facilities to locate it. For Windows, use the Search button of the Windows Explorer tool. For Unix, try the following command:

```
find / -name httpd.conf
```

2. Check to see that the following line is not commented out and is available in `httpd.conf` OR `/etc/apache/modules.conf`:

```
LoadModule status_module /usr/lib/apache/1.3/mod_status.so
```

#### Note

You may have to search in alternate locations to find the `mod_status.so` file. Also, the syntax may differ depending on your configuration.

3. Turn the `ExtendedStatus` option on in the `httpd.conf` file. This option is typically commented out. You can enable it by uncommenting it or ensuring that it is defined.

```
#ExtendedStatus on
```

becomes:

```
ExtendedStatus on
```

4. Enable the `/server-status` location in the `httpd.conf` file. Typically, this option exists but is commented out.

```
#<Location /server-status>
#   SetHandler server-status
#   Order deny,allow
#   Deny from all
#   Allow from .example.com
#</Location>
```

becomes:

```
<Location /server-status>
SetHandler server-status
Order deny,allow
Deny from all
Allow from zenoss.example.com
</Location>
```

### Note

Your Resource Manager server or servers must be able to connect to your Apache server. Ensure that it is listed here or is part of the network specified in this chunk of configuration.

To specify multiple servers, separate the entries with spaces. If you specify an IP address range rather than a destination, be sure to add a network mask to the end of the IP address range.

The following example allows a server called `externalzenoss.example.com`, as well as all servers that start with `192.168.10`, in their addresses:

```
<Location /server-status>SetHandler server-status
Order deny,allow
Deny from all
Allow from externalzenoss.example.com 192.168.10.0/24
</Location>
```

5. Save the `httpd.conf` file with these changes and verify that the configuration file is correct. This can be accomplished with following command.

```
apachectl -t
```

Correct any issues before restarting Apache.

6. Restart the Web server (`httpd`). This can be accomplished with following command.

```
apachectl restart
```

## 5.3.2. Display the Status Page in Apache Version 2.x

1. On the Apache server, find the `httpd.conf` file. This is usually `/etc/apache2/apache2.conf` or `/etc/apache2/conf/httpd.conf`; however, other locations are possible depending on your operating system and setup.

If you are unsure about where your configuration file is located, use your system's search facilities to locate this file. Under Windows, use the Search button of the Windows Explorer tool. Under Unix, try the following command:

```
find / -name httpd.conf
```

2. Verify that the `mod_status` module is loaded.

```
apache% apachectl -M 2<&l | grep status
status_module (shared)
```

The previous output indicates that the module is loaded and no further configuration is necessary. If there is no output, then copy the `mods-available/status.load` to the `mods-enabled` directory, and then run:

```
apache% /etc/init.d/apache2 force-reload
```

3. Turn the `ExtendedStatus` option on in the `httpd.conf` file. This option is typically commented out. You can enable it by uncommenting it or ensuring that it is defined.

```
#ExtendedStatus on
```

becomes:

```
ExtendedStatus on
```

4. Enable the `/server-status` location in the `httpd.conf` file. This is another option that typically already exists but is commented out.

```
#<Location /server-status>
#   SetHandler server-status
#   Order deny,allow
#   Deny from all
#   Allow from .example.com
#</Location>
```

becomes:

```
<Location /server-status>
SetHandler server-status
Order deny,allow
Deny from all
Allow from zenoss.example.com
</Location>
```

### Note

Your Resource Manager server or servers must be able to connect to your Apache server so you must ensure that it is either listed here or is a part of the network specified in this chunk of configuration.

To specify multiple servers, separate the entries with spaces. If you would like to specify an IP address range rather than a destination, be sure to add a network mask to the end of the IP address range. The following example allows a server called `externalzenoss.example.com` as well as all servers that start with '192.168.10' in their addresses:

```
<Location /server-status>SetHandler server-status
Order deny,allowDeny from all
Allow from externalzenoss.example.com 192.168.10.0/24
</Location>
```

5. Save the `httpd.conf` file with these changes and verify that the configuration file is correct. This can be accomplished with following command.

```
apache2ctl -t
```

Correct any issues before restarting Apache.

6. Restart the webserver (`httpd`). This can be accomplished with following command.

```
apache2ctl restart
```

### 5.3.3. Verifying Your Apache Configuration

Once Apache has been configured, you should verify that it is working correctly. To verify your Apache server, point your Web browser to your Apache server at the appropriately modified URL:

```
http://your-apache-server/server-status?auto
```

This is an example of what you might see:

```
Total Accesses: 1
Total kBytes: 2
Uptime: 43
ReqPerSec: .0232558
BytesPerSec: 47.6279
BytesPerReq: 2048
BusyWorkers: 1
IdleWorkers: 5
Scoreboard: _W_____
```

If there is a configuration issue, you should see an error message telling you that the page is forbidden.

**Note**

Your Resource Manager server or servers must be able to connect to your Apache server by using HTTP to receive information. This means that the Resource Manager server must be permitted not only by the Apache configuration settings, but also by any firewalls or proxies between the Resource Manager server and the Apache server, including any firewall on the Apache server. If there are any proxies, they must be configured to allow the Resource Manager HTTP traffic through. Consult your network administrator and security officer to verify the firewall configuration and your site's policies.

Further note that the name or IP address that your server has behind a firewall may be different than the IP address (some form of Network Address Translation (NAT)) or name resolution (the way that the external server resolves names may be through an Internet-visible DNS system rather than an intranet-only DNS system).

**5.3.4. Configure Resource Manager to Monitor the Web Server**

Once the Apache server is configured to allow Resource Manager to access the extended status, you can add Apache monitoring to the device within Resource Manager by binding the Apache template to the device.

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. In the left panel, expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the Apache template to the list of templates, and then click **Save**.

The Apache template is added. The system can now begin collecting the Apache server metrics from this device.

**5.4. Daemons**

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 5.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 6. WebLogic Application Server

## 6.1. About

The WebLogicMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor an Oracle WebLogic Server. WebLogicMonitor uses the JMX Remote API and accesses MBeans deployed within WebLogic that contain performance information about the components that are being managed. This performance information includes pool sizes for data sources (JDBC), threads, connections (JCA), queues (JMS), servlets, JSPs, Enterprise Java Beans (EJB), timer queues.

Throughput is also monitored when it is available. This metric is computed by WebLogic and is based on the number of messages moving through a queue at any given time. The throughput metric gives a good picture of the health of the messaging subsystem, which is commonly used throughout many enterprise applications. Stateless, Stateful, and Entity EJB performance metrics are monitored, as are message driven bean performance.

Security realms are also monitored for potential denial of service attacks. This includes recording of authentication failures, broken out by valid accounts, invalid accounts, and accounts that are currently locked out. Application specific realms can be monitored by customizing the built in WebLogic default realm.

### 6.1.1. Overall Application Server Vitals

- Number of total and active JMS connections and servers
- Overall number of JTA transactions that are rolled back or abandoned
- JTA transactions rolled back due to system, application, or resource issues
- Number of JTA rollbacks that timeout
- Active and committed JTA transaction count
- Timer exceptions, executions, and scheduled triggers
- User accounts that are locked and unlocked
- Authentication failures against locked accounts and non-existent accounts
- Total sockets opened, and the current number of open sockets
- JVM Mark/Sweep and Copy garbage collector execution counts
- Number of JVM daemon threads
- JVM Heap/Non-Heap used and committed memory

### 6.1.2. Entity EJB, Message Driven Bean (MDB), and Session EJB Subsystem Metrics

- Rollback and commit count on a per-EJB basis
- Bean pool accesses, cache hits, and cache misses
- Number of Beans in use, idle, and destroyed
- Number of activations and passivations

### 6.1.3. Data Pool (JDBC) metrics

- Leaked, Total, and Active connections
- Number of requests waiting for a connection
- Number of reconnect failures

### 6.1.4. Queue (JMS) Metrics

- Bytes received, currently active, and pending in the queue

- Number of queue consumers
- Number of current, pending, and receives messages

## 6.2. Prerequisites

WebLogic 9.0 or higher is required.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenJMX, ZenPacks.zenoss.WebLogicMonitor

Table 6.1. WebLogicMonitor Prerequisites

## 6.3. Enable Monitoring

### 6.3.1. Configuring WebLogic to Allow JMX Queries

If you have not set up a domain and server then run the **startWLS.sh** script located in the `${BEA_HOME}/wlserver_10.0/server/bin` directory. If you don't have the Terminal I/O package installed you can set the `JAVA_OPTIONS` variable to the following value:

```
JAVA_OPTIONS="-Dweblogic.management.allowPasswordEcho=true"
export JAVA_OPTIONS
```

Provide a user name and password to start WebLogic. Note that WebLogic requires a password that is at least eight characters long. Wait for WebLogic to generate a configuration and start up. Shut down WebLogic and restart it with remote JMX access enabled.

To enable remote JMX access set the following variable:

```
JAVA_OPTIONS="-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=12347"
JAVA_OPTIONS="${JAVA_OPTIONS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=false"
JAVA_OPTIONS="${JAVA_OPTIONS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false"
export JAVA_OPTIONS
```

Then re-run the **./startWLS.sh** script. **JConsole** can then communicate with the server on port 12347.

### 6.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All WebLogic services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/WebLogic` device class.

#### Note

The **zenjmx** daemon must be configured and running. See Section 28.2.1, "Oracle Java Runtime Environment (JRE)" for more information about configuring the **zenjmx** daemon with the Sun JRE tools.

1. Navigate to the device class or device.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.

- b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zWebLogicJmxManagementAuthenticate	This configuration property is deprecated
zWebLogicJmxManagementPassword	JMX password
zWebLogicJmxManagementPort	The port number used to gather JMX information
zWebLogicJmxManagementUsername	JMX username for authentication

Table 6.2. WebLogic Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the WebLogic server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for performance graphs. After approximately 15 minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

### Tip

The out-of-the-box WebLogic data source configuration has been defined at the macro level, but can be configured to operate on a more granular basis. For example, the Servlet Reload Count applies to all servlets in all web applications but it could be narrowed to be Servlet /submitOrder in web application "production server".

## 6.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed

1. Navigate to the device or device class.
2. Select Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
3. From the Action menu, select Bind Templates to display the Bind Templates dialog.
4. Move templates from the Available area to the Selected area, and then click **Save**.

Name	Description
WebLogic Core	Core information about any WebLogic server, including memory usage, threads, and uptime.
WebLogic JCA	
WebLogic JMS	
WebLogic JMS Destination	
WebLogic JTA	
WebLogic JTA Rollbacks	
WebLogic JVM	
WebLogic Thread Pool	Threadpool metrics measured per Tomcat connector
WebLogic Timer Service	
WebLogic User Lockouts	

Table 6.3. WebLogic Templates

5. Click the OK button to save your changes.

## 6.5. Viewing Raw Data

See the Section 28.5, "Using **JConsole** to Query a JMX Agent" section for more information about how to investigate raw data returned back from the application.



## 6.6. Monitor SSL-Proxied WebLogic Servers

If you are monitoring a Web application running on WebLogic server, you may find that the transaction always fails with a code 550 regardless of how you configure the script. This could be a result of the WebLogic server being behind an SSL proxy. When used in this configuration, WebLogic requires that a `WL-Proxy-SSL` header be added to the request so that it knows to redirect to HTTPS instead of HTTP.

To support this extra header in your Resource Manager Web transaction, you must make the following changes on the script tab of your WebTx data source.

- Remove any content from the Initial URL field.
- Add the following to the beginning of the Script box.

```
add_extra_header WL-Proxy-SSL true
go
```

## 6.7. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zenjmx</b>

Table 6.4. Daemons

---

# Chapter 7. BIG-IP Network Devices

## 7.1. About

The BIG-IP network device monitoring feature monitors load balancer CPU and memory utilization. It also tracks per-instance metrics for each load-balanced virtual server that is configured.


## 7.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.BigIPMonitor

Table 7.1. BIG-IP Prerequisites

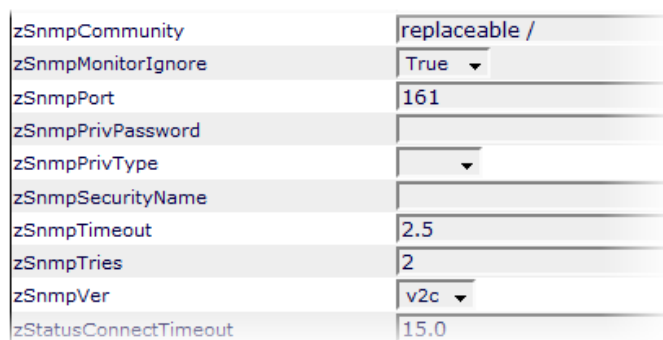
## 7.3. Enable Monitoring

To add a device and enable BIG-IP monitoring on it:

1. From Infrastructure, select Add a Single Device from  (Add Device).

The Add a Single Device page appears.

2. Enter a name for the device, and then select these values:
  - **Model Device** - De-select this option.
  - **Device Class** - Select `/Network/BIG-IP`.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Navigate to the newly created device.
5. Select Configuration Properties in the left panel.
6. Change the values of these configuration properties:
  - **zSnmpCommunity** - Enter the SNMP community string here.
  - **zSnmpVer** - Select `v2c`.



zSnmpCommunity	replaceable /
zSnmpMonitorIgnore	True
zSnmpPort	161
zSnmpPrivPassword	
zSnmpPrivType	
zSnmpSecurityName	
zSnmpTimeout	2.5
zSnmpTries	2
zSnmpVer	v2c
zStatusConnectTimeout	15.0

Figure 7.1. BIG-IP Configuration Properties Selections

7. Click **Save**.
8. Model the device. To do this, select Manage > Model Device from the page menu.

Resource Manager models the device. When modeling completes, you can view the device. After approximately fifteen minutes, you can verify that the performance graphs are updating.

## 7.4. Viewing Virtual Servers

To view the virtual servers, select BIG-IP details. Click a link in the table to view additional information for each load-balanced server.

## 7.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

*Table 7.2. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 8. Brocade SAN Switches

## 8.1. About

BrocadeMonitor allows you to monitor Brocade Storage Area Network (SAN) switches.

## 8.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.BrocadeMonitor, ZenPacks.zenoss.StorageBase

Table 8.1. Brocade Prerequisites

## 8.3. Enable Monitoring

### 8.3.1. Configuring Brocade Devices to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the Brocade devices to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 8.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All Brocade devices must exist under the `/Devices/Storage/Brocade` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmCommunity	Consult with your storage administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted
zSnmMonitorIgnore	This should be set to <code>False</code>
zSnmPort	The default port is 161
zSnmVer	This should be set to <code>v2c</code>

Table 8.2. Brocade Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes. You will now be able to start collecting the Brocade switch metrics from this device.

## 8.4. Viewing Fibre Channel Port Information

To view the virtual servers, select Brocade Details.

## 8.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

*Table 8.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 9. CheckPoint Firewalls

## 9.1. About

The CheckPointMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor CheckPoint firewalls.

## 9.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.CheckPointMonitor

Table 9.1. CheckPoint Prerequisites

## 9.3. Enable Monitoring

### 9.3.1. Configuring CheckPoint Firewalls to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the CheckPoint firewall to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and to send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 9.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All CheckPoint devices must exist under the `/Devices/Network/Check Point` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmpCommunity	Consult with your network administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
zSnmpMonitorIgnore	This should be set to <code>False</code>
zSnmpPort	The default port is 161
zSnmpVer	This should be set to <code>v2c</code>

Table 9.2. CheckPoint Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the CheckPoint firewall metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for performance graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 9.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

*Table 9.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 10. Cisco Devices

## 10.1. About

The CiscoMonitor ZenPack provides additional support for monitoring faults and performance of a wide range of Cisco equipment, including virtual resources such as virtual firewalls and virtual load balancers.

### 10.1.1. Features

The CiscoMonitor ZenPack monitors these Cisco products:

- Catalyst 6500 Series Switches
- Catalyst 6500 Series Virtual Switching Systems (VSS)
- Application Control Engine (ACE) Modules for Catalyst 6500 Series
- Firewall Services Modules (FWSM) for Catalyst 6500 Series
- ASA 5500 Series Adaptive Security Appliance
- Nexus 7000 Series Switches
- Nexus 5000 Series Switches
- Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extenders
- Nexus 1000v Series Switches
- Virtual Security Gateway (VSG) for Nexus 1000v Series Switches
- ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Routers
- ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers
- MDS 9000 Series Multilayer Switches
- Wireless LAN Controllers (WLC)
- TelePresence Codecs

#### 10.1.1.1. Supported Common Features

The following common features are available across the supported products (where available).

Base Discovery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Chassis</li><li>• Supervisor modules</li><li>• Line cards</li><li>• Power supplies</li><li>• Fans</li><li>• Temperature sensors</li><li>• Physical ports and interfaces</li><li>• Port channels</li><li>• VLANs</li><li>• VRFs</li><li>• Other logical interfaces</li></ul>
Base Monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Event collection from syslog and SNMP traps</li><li>• CPU and memory utilization for chassis and supervisor modules</li><li>• Power consumption and status for chassis and FRUs</li><li>• Power available and drawn for power supplies</li></ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Temperature for temperature sensors</li> <li>• Interface utilization, throughput, error rate, and status for all physical Ethernet interfaces</li> <li>• Interface utilization, throughput, and status for all logical Ethernet interfaces</li> <li>• Throughput and status for VLANs</li> </ul>
--	---

Table 10.1. Available Features

### 10.1.1.2. Supported Discovery and Modeling

Discovery and modeling are supported for these product lines:

Catalyst 6500	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual switching system (VSS)</li> <li>• Service modules</li> </ul>
ACE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual load balancing contexts</li> <li>• Service policies</li> <li>• Server farms</li> <li>• Real servers</li> </ul>
FWSM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual security contexts</li> <li>• L4/L7 resources</li> </ul>
ASA 5500	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual firewall security contexts</li> </ul>
Nexus 7000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fabric cards</li> <li>• Virtual device contexts (VDCs)</li> </ul>
Nexus 5000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fibre-channel ports</li> <li>• VSANs</li> <li>• Storage zones</li> <li>• Storage zone sets</li> </ul>
Nexus 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nexus 2000 fabric extenders</li> </ul>
Nexus 1000v	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual Ethernet modules (VEMs)</li> <li>• Virtual Ethernet interfaces</li> </ul>
VSG	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Security zones</li> </ul>
ASR 9000 ASR 1000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MPLS L3 VPNs</li> </ul>
MDS 9000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fibre-channel ports</li> <li>• VSANs</li> <li>• Storage zones</li> <li>• Storage zone sets</li> </ul>
Wireless LAN Controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access points</li> </ul>
TelePresence Codecs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telepresence peripherals</li> </ul>

Table 10.2. Supported Discovery and Modeling

### 10.1.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Zenoss Platform	Resource Manager 4.x

Prerequisite	Restriction
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.CiscoMonitor 4.0
Zenoss Processes	zenmodeler, zenperfsnmp, zencommand, zentrap, zensyslog

Table 10.3. Prerequisites

### 10.1.3. Firewall Access

Firewall access between the Resource Manager collector server and monitored devices depends on the type of device being monitored. The following table provides a consolidated view of required network access ports.

Source	Destination	Port and Protocol
Resource Manager collector	Monitored device	ICMP (Ping)
Resource Manager collector	Monitored device	161/UDP (SNMP)
Resource Manager collector	Monitored device	22/TCP (SSH)
Resource Manager collector	Monitored device	23/TCP (Telnet)
Resource Manager collector	Monitored device	80/TCP (HTTP)
Monitored device	Resource Manager collector	ICMP (Ping)
Monitored device	Resource Manager collector	162/UDP (SNMP trap)
Monitored device	Resource Manager collector	514/UDP (syslog)

Table 10.4. Required Network Access Ports

### 10.1.4. Limitations

The following limitations apply to this version of the CiscoMonitor ZenPack:

- This ZenPack does not provide support for UCS. Instead, UCS is supported by the ZenPacks.zenoss.CiscoUCS ZenPack.
- This ZenPack does not provide support for Cisco CallManager. Instead, Cisco CallManager is supported by the ZenPacks.zenoss.CallManagerMonitor ZenPack.

### 10.1.5. Installation

Because of its large size, you must install the CiscoMonitor ZenPack from the command line. Follow these steps to install the ZenPack:

1. As the zenoss user, copy the CiscoMonitor ZenPack .egg file to your Resource Manager master server:

```
zenpack --install FileName.egg
```

2. As the zenoss user, run this command to restart Resource Manager on your master server:

```
zenoss restart
```

3. If you have distributed hubs or collectors, then you must update them after installing the ZenPack. To do this:
  - a. From the Resource Manager interface, select Advanced > Collectors.
  - b. For each hub:

- i. Click the hub to select it.
- ii. In the Hub Configuration area, select Update Hub from the Action menu.

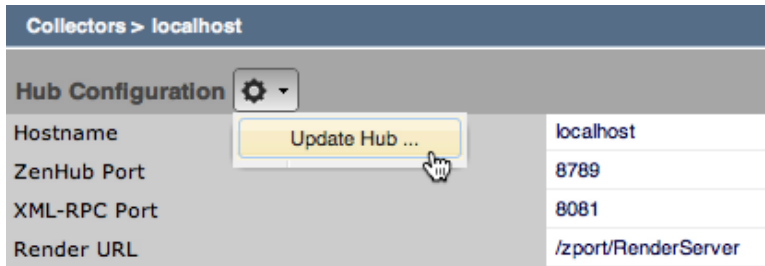


Figure 10.1. Update Hub

- c. For each collector:
  - i. Click the collector to select it.
  - ii. In the Performance Collector Configuration area, select Update Collector from the Action menu.

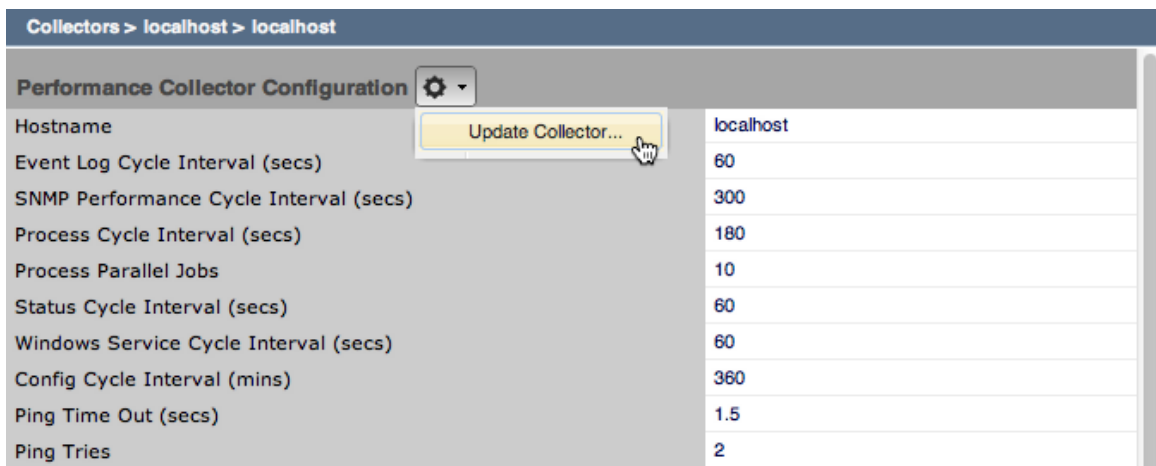


Figure 10.2. Update Collector

## 10.1.6. Configuration

To configure the CiscoMonitor ZenPack, you must:

- Ensure monitored devices are placed in the appropriate device class
- Provide the correct credentials for network protocols used to monitor the devices

### 10.1.6.1. Choosing the Correct Device Class

A device must be placed in the correct device class to ensure its most appropriate discovery and monitoring. The DiscoveryMapping ZenPack automatically assigns a Cisco device to its device class based on the device's sysObjectID. This allows you to initiate discovery of a single Cisco device from the /Discovered device class, or to discover an entire subnet and have all Cisco devices correctly classified.

The following table shows how the DiscoveryMapping ZenPack classifies Cisco devices:

Cisco Device Type	Resource Manager Device Class
Catalyst 6500	/Network/Cisco/6500
Catalyst 6500 VSS	/Network/Cisco/6500/VSS
ACE	/Network/Cisco/ACE

Cisco Device Type	Resource Manager Device Class
FWSM	/Network/Cisco/FWSM
Nexus 7000	/Network/Cisco/Nexus/7000
Nexus 5000	/Network/Cisco/Nexus/5000
Nexus 2000	
Nexus 1000v	/Network/Cisco/Nexus/1000V
VSG	/Network/Cisco/VSG
ASR 9000	/Network/Cisco/ASR/9000
ASR 1000	/Network/Cisco/ASR/1000
ASA	/Network/Cisco/ASA
MDS 9000	/Network/Cisco/MDS/9000
WLC	/Network/Cisco/WLC
TelePresence Codec	/Network/Cisco/Codec
Other IOS	/Network/Cisco
Other CatOS	/Network/Cisco/CatOS

Table 10.5. Cisco Device to Resource Manager Device Class Mapping

### 10.1.6.2. Configuring Credentials

Resource Manager uses different network protocols to monitor Cisco devices. In many cases, Resource Manager uses multiple protocols for the same device. The following table shows supported device types and the protocols used to discover and monitor them.

Cisco Device Type	Discovery and Monitoring Protocols
Catalyst 6500	ICMP, SNMP, Telnet or SSH
Catalyst 6500 VSS	ICMP, SMP, Telnet or SSH
ACE	ICMP, SNMP, API (XML over HTTP: 80/TCP)
FWSM	ICMP, SNMP
ASA	ICMP, SNMP
Nexus 7000	ICMP, SNMP, Netconf (XML over SSH)
Nexus 5000	ICMP, SNMP, Netconf (XML over SSH)
Nexus 2000	
Nexus 1000v	ICMP, SNMP, Netconf (XML over SSH)
VSG	ICMP, SNMP, SSH, Netconf (XML over SSH)
ASR 9000	ICMP, SNMP, Telnet or SSH
ASR 1000	ICMP, SNMP
MDS 9000	ICMP, SNMP
WLC	ICMP, SNMP
TelePresence Codec	ICMP, SNMP
Other IOS	ICMP, SNMP
Other CatOS	ICMP, SNMP

Table 10.6. Cisco Device - Discovery and Monitoring Protocols

Set the following configuration properties to provide needed credentials for the management protocols listed in the previous table:

Protocol	Configuration Property	Notes
SNMPv1, SNMPv2c	zSnmCommunities zSnmCommunity	
SNMPv3	zSnmSecurityName zSnmAuthType zSnmAuthPassword zSnmPrivType zSnmPrivPassword	Use zSnmVer to specify which SNMP protocol version to use.
Telnet, SSH, Netconf	zCommandUsername zCommandPassword	The zCommandProtocol and zCommandPort properties control whether SSH or Telnet is used for CLI access. Typically, for SSH zCommandProtocol is set to ssh and zCommandPort is set to 22. For Telnet, zCommandProtocol is set to telnet and zCommandPort is set to 22.
ACE XML over HTTP API	zCommandUsername zCommandPassword	

Table 10.7. Configuration Properties Settings

### 10.1.7. Monitoring Logical Contexts

Several supported device types can create logical contexts that act as virtual devices. In these cases, Resource Manager has the ability to identify the logical contexts and associate them with the admin or parent context.

These device types support logical contexts:

Device Type	Resource Manager Context
ACE	Virtual Load Balancing Contexts
FWSM	Virtual Security Contexts
ASA	Virtual Security Contexts
Nexus 7000	Virtual Device Contexts (VDCs)

Table 10.8. Supported Logical Contexts

For Resource Manager to discover and associate these logical contexts with the admin or parent context, it must also be able to discover the management IP address of each logical context. A logical context is placed in the same device class as its associated device. For example, a Nexus 7000 VDC is placed in the /Network/Cisco/Nexus/7000 device class.

### 10.1.8. Removing the ZenPack

#### Warning

Use caution when removing the CiscoMonitor ZenPack. If you remove this ZenPack, it permanently removes the /Network/Cisco device class, its contained devices, and configuration.

To remove the CiscoMonitor ZenPack, run the following command as the zenoss user on your master Resource Manager server:

```
zenpack --remove ZenPacks.zenoss.CiscoMonitor
```

---

# Chapter 11. Cisco UCS

## 11.1. About

The CiscoUCS ZenPack enables Resource Manager to use HTTP to monitor Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS) devices. Using Cisco's UCSTM™ Manager XML API, the system models and monitors devices placed in the `/CiscoUCS` device class.

The Cisco UCS ZenPack provides:

- Fabric interconnect monitoring
- Monitoring of equipment chassis and their compute blades
- Monitoring of service profiles, their compute blade assignments, and links to any other Resource Manager device from the UCS service profile on which it is running
- Full monitoring of events generated by the UCS

## 11.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.5.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.CiscoUCS, ZenPacks.zenoss.DynamicView

Table 11.1. Cisco UCS Prerequisites

## 11.3. Adding a Cisco UCS Device for Monitoring

Follow these steps to begin monitoring a Cisco UCS device through Resource Manager:

1. In the Resource Manager interface, navigate to the `/CiscoUCS` device class.

2. From , select Add Cisco UCS.

The Add Cisco UCS dialog appears.

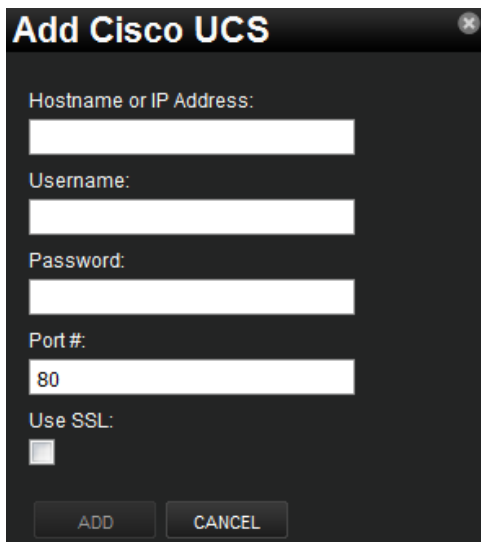


Figure 11.1. Add Cisco UCS Unit

3. Enter information in the dialog:
  - **Hostname or IP Address** - Enter the host name or IP address of the UCS manager.
  - **Username** - Enter the user name of an authorized user.
  - **Password** - Enter the password to the user account.
  - **Port #** - By default, Resource Manager assumes a standard HTTP port of 80. Change this value as needed.
4. Click **Add Unit** to begin discovery.

## 11.4. UCS Monitoring Credentials

These configuration properties are populated automatically if you use the Add Cisco UCS dialog. (See the previous section, Adding a Cisco UCS Device for Monitoring.)

Name	Description
zCiscoUCSManagerUser	Username that will be used to access the Cisco UCS through the UCS Manager.
zCiscoUCSManagerPassword	Password to validate the username.
zCiscoUCSManagerPort	Port number used to monitor the Cisco UCS. The default value is 80.

Table 11.2. Cisco UCS Configuration Properties

## 11.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>
Event Monitoring	<b>zenucsevents</b>

Table 11.3. Daemons

# Chapter 12. Datacenter View

## 12.1. About

Datacenter View is a visual representation of devices (such as a server or blade and device containers (such as a rack or chassis) in the system. Using this feature, you can create a custom view that represents a physical space (such as a data center) by customizing the view background. You can then overlay this view with active representations of your devices and device containers.

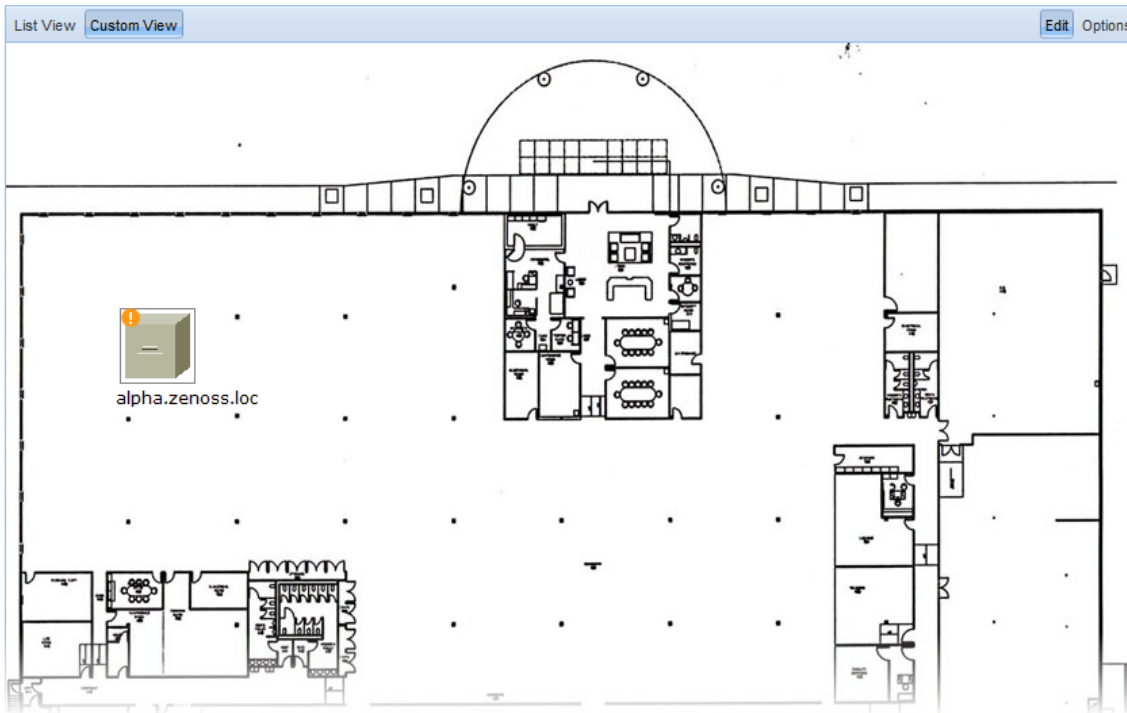


Figure 12.1. Custom View

For each device or device container, the system can generate a rack view, which diagrams the physical location of devices in a chassis or rack. Each represented device provides at-a-glance information about its status.



Figure 12.2. Rack View

## 12.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.5.1 or later



Prerequisite	Restriction
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.Diagram

Table 12.1. Datacenter View Prerequisites

Before a device or sub-location can appear in Datacenter View:

- At least one organizer must be configured
- At least one device or sub-organizer must be included in a location

To see the auto-generated rack view, you must set a rack slot value for the device. (For more information about this view, see the section titled *Activating the Auto-Generated Rack View*.)

## 12.3. Working with the List View

The List View provides a view of your devices (or, if configured, the Rack View).

Follow these steps to access the List View:

1. From the interface, select Infrastructure.
2. In the devices hierarchy, select a location, group, or system.
3. Click **Details**.
4. Select Datacenter View.

The List View appears.

### Note

After you create a Custom View, that view appears by default.

## 12.4. Working with the Custom View

The Custom View lets you create a visual representation of your physical space (such as a data center).

To access the Custom View, from the Diagram selection, click Custom View.

You can edit the Custom View to:

- Add or change a background image
- Move or resize device images
- Remove the view

### 12.4.1. Adding a Background Image to the Custom View

Follow these steps to create a custom view and add a background image to the view:

1. From the Datacenter View page (accessed from the Diagram selection), click **Custom View**.
2. Click **Edit** to enable edit mode.

The Edit button highlights to indicate that it is active, and Options selections become available.

3. Select Options > Change Background.

The Change Background dialog appears.

4. Select Background Image from URL from the list of options.
5. Enter an image location in the Image URL field, and then click **Save**. Any image format and size supported by your browser can be used.

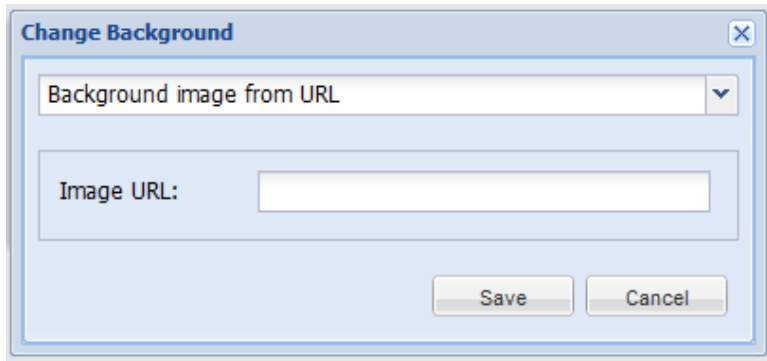


Figure 12.3. Change Background

#### 12.4.1.1. Removing the Custom View Background Image

To remove the current background image from the Custom View:

1. From the Custom View area, click **Edit**.
2. Select **Options > Change Background**.
3. In the Change Background dialog, select **No background image** from the list of options.
4. Click **Save**.

The image no longer appears in the view.

#### 12.4.2. Working with Devices in the Custom View

Devices in the custom view can be moved and resized. To work with devices in this view, click **Edit**. You can then drag devices to a specific location in the view, and resize them to accurately represent your physical space.

You also can view device details from this view. Click the device to go to its Status page.

##### Note

To access device status, you cannot be in edit mode.

#### 12.4.3. Removing the Custom View

Removing the custom view removes the view and custom background image, if any. To remove a custom view:

1. From the Datacenter View page (accessed from the Diagram selection), click **Custom View**.
2. Click **Edit** to enable edit mode.
3. Select **Options > Remove Custom View**.

The custom view no longer appears by default. If you select Custom View, devices still appear in the view; however, they are reset to default positions and sizes.

### 12.5. Activating the Auto-Generated Rack View

First, ensure that the device is included in a location. Then follow these steps to make devices visible in Datacenter View.

1. Edit the device you want to make visible. From the list of Devices, select a device (in the illustration, beta.zenoss.loc), click **Details**, and then select **Edit**.
2. Enter values for Rack Slot, in the format:

`ru=n,rh=n,st=n`

where:

- $ru=n$  sets the value for rack unit (the lowest unit used by the device)
- $rh=n$  sets the value for rack height (the number of units the device uses in the rack)
- $st=n$  sets the value for rack slot
- $sc=n$  sets the value for slot capacity (set only for chassis devices)

For example, values of:

$ru=2, rh=1$

establishes a device visually in the rack as shown in this illustration:

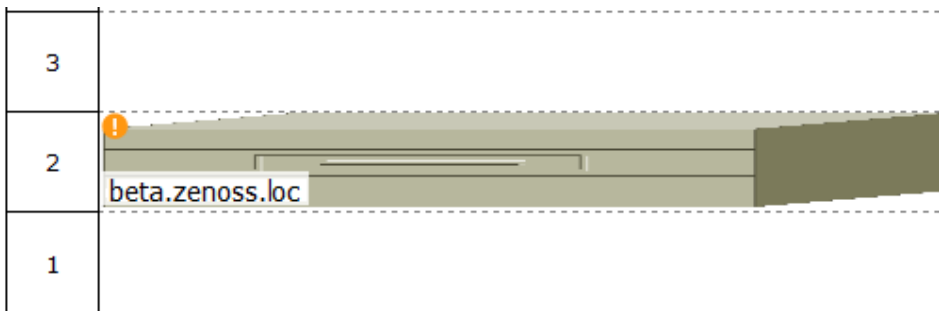


Figure 12.4. Setting Rack Slot Value

**Note**

In the example, a rack slot value is not needed, as there is only one device.

3. Click **Save**.

The device appears in Datacenter View. In the List View, it appears as part of a rack illustration. (The rack illustration is now the default image in the List View.)

In the Custom View, it appears as a single device image.

**Note**

You can customize this device image by modifying the `zicon` configuration property in the device class.

---

# Chapter 13. Dell Hardware

## 13.1. About

The DellMonitor ZenPack provides custom modeling of devices running the Dell OpenManage agents. It also contains hardware identification for Dell proprietary hardware. The information is collected through the SNMP interface.

The following information is modeled:

- Hardware Model
- Hardware Serial Number
- Operating System
- CPU Information (socket, speed, cache, voltage)
- PCI Card Information (manufacturer, model)

## 13.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DellMonitor
On each remote device	The Dell OpenManage SNMP Agent is used to gather information about the device.

Table 13.1. Dell Hardware Prerequisites

## 13.3. Enable Enhanced Modeling

To enable modeling:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Modeler Plugins from the left panel.
4. Click Add Fields to reveal the list of available plugins.
5. Select the following plugins from the Available fields list, and then drag them to the Plugins list:
  - DellCPUMap
  - DellDeviceMap
  - DellPCIMap
6. Remove the following plugins by clicking on the 'X' button located to the right of the plugin.
  - zenoss.snmp.CpuMap
  - zenoss.snmp.DeviceMap
7. Click Save to save the updates.
8. Remodel the device using these new plugins by selecting Model Device from the Action menu.

## 13.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	zenmodeler

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenperfsnmp

*Table 13.2. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 14. Device Access Control Lists

## 14.1. About

The Device Access Control List (ACL) Enterprise ZenPack (ZenDeviceACL) adds fine-grained security controls to Resource Manager. You can use this control to limit access to data, such as limiting access to certain departments within a large organization, or limiting a customer of a service provider to see only his own data.

A user with limited access to objects also has a more limited view of features within the system. Most global views, such as the network map, event console, and all types of class management, are not available. The Device List is available, as are the device organizers Systems, Groups, and Locations. A limited set of reports can also be accessed.

## 14.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenDeviceACL

Table 14.1. Device ACL Prerequisites

## 14.3. Key Concepts

### 14.3.1. Permissions and Roles

Actions in Resource Manager are assigned permissions. For example, to access the device edit screen you must have the “Change Device” permission. Permissions are not assigned directly to a user, but granted to roles, which are then assigned to a user. A common example is the ZenUser role. Its primary permission is “View,” which grants read-only access to all objects.

ZenManagers have additional permissions, such as “Change Device,” which grants users with this role access to the device edit screen. When you assign a role to a user (using the Roles field on the Edit tab), it is assigned globally. When creating a restricted user you may not want to give that user a global role.

For more information about Resource Manager roles, refer to the *Resource Manager Administration* guide.

### 14.3.2. Administered Objects

Device ACLs provide limited control to various objects in the system. Administered objects are the same as device organizers (groups, systems, locations, and devices). If access is granted to any device organizer, it extends to all devices in that organizer.

To assign access to objects for a restricted user, you must be assigned the Manager or ZenManager role. Resource Manager grants access to objects by using the “Administered Objects” selection for a user or user group. To limit access, you must not assign a “global” role to the user or group.

### 14.3.3. Users and Groups

Users and user groups work exactly as they would normally. See the chapter titled “Managing Users” in the *Resource Manager Administration* guide for more information about managing users and groups.

### 14.3.4. Assigning Administered Object Access

For each user or group there is selection called “Administered Objects.” The Action menu has an “Add” item for each type of administered object. Adding an object will bring up a dialog box with live search on the given type of object.

After adding an object, you can assign it to a role. Roles can be different for each object. For example, a user or group might have the ZenUser role assigned to a particular device but the ZenManager role assigned to a location organizer. If multiple roles are granted to a device through direct assignment and organizer assignment, the resulting permissions will be additive. For the previously cited example, if the device is within the organizer the user will inherit the ZenManager role on the device.

## 14.3.5. Restricted Screen Functionality

### 14.3.5.1. Dashboard

By default, the dashboard is configured with three portlets:

- Object Watch List
- Device Issues
- Production State

These have content that are restricted to objects for a given user.

### 14.3.5.2. Device List

The device list is automatically filtered to devices of a restricted user, scoped to accessible devices. There are no menu items available.

### 14.3.5.3. Device Organizers

Device organizers control groups of devices for a restricted user. Each device added to the group will be accessible to the user. Permissions are inherited through multiple tiers of a device organizer.

### 14.3.5.4. Reporting

Reports are limited to device reports and performance reports.

### 14.3.5.5. Viewing Events

A user in restricted mode does not have access to the global event console. The available events for the user can be seen under his organizers.

## 14.4. Create a User Restricted to Specific Devices

1. As admin or any user account with Manager or ZenManager role, create a user named acctest. Set a password for the user.
2. From the user's Edit page, make sure that no role is assigned.
3. Select the user's Administered Objects page.
4. From the Action menu, select the "Add Device..." item and add an existing device to that user.

The device's role defaults to ZenUser.

5. Log out of your browser, or open a second browser and then log in as acctest.
6. Go to Infrastructure > Devices.

You should see only the device you assigned to acctest.

7. Navigate to the device and notice that the Edit selection is not available. This is because you are in read-only mode for this device.

## 14.5. Create a Manager Restricted to Specific Devices

Following the previous example:

1. Go back to the acctest user's Administered Objects and set the role on the device to ZenManager.
2. As acctest, navigate to the device. You now have access to the Edit page.

## **14.6. Adding Device Organizers**

1. Go to the Groups root and create a group called "RestrictGroup."
2. Go to the acctest user's Administered Objects and add the group to the user.
3. Logged in as acctest, notice that the Navigation menu has the Groups item. Group can be added to a user.
4. Place a device within this group and as acctest you should not only see the device within the group but also in the device list.

## **14.7. Restricted User Organizer Management**

1. Assign the acctest user the ZenManager role on your restricted group.
2. As acctest, you can now add sub-organizers under the restricted group.



---

# Chapter 15. Distributed Collector

## 15.1. About Distributed Collector

Distributed Collector allows you to deploy additional performance collection and event monitoring daemons to the Resource Manager server or other servers. Doing this allows you to:

- Distribute processor, disk, and network load across multiple servers.
- Collect performance and events from networks that cannot be reached by the Resource Manager server.
- Configure more than one set of monitoring settings, such as different cycle times, for the `zenperfsnmp` daemon.

When you first install Distributed Collector, Resource Manager is configured with one hub and one collector. You cannot delete the initial hub and collector (each named `localhost`) that are set up by Distributed Collector.

### 15.1.1. About Collectors

A *collector* is a set of collection daemons, on the Resource Manager server or another server, that shares a common configuration. That configuration contains values, such as:

- Number of seconds between SNMP collections cycles
- Default discovery networks
- Maximum number of `zenprocess` parallel jobs

Each collector has its own copy of each of the Resource Manager collection daemons. For example, Resource Manager initially contains collection daemons with names like `zenperfsnmp`, `zenprocess`, and `zenping`. If you create a new collector named `My2ndCollector`, then the system creates new daemons named `My2ndCollector_zenperfsnmp`, `My2ndCollector_zenprocess`, and `My2ndCollector_zenping`.

### 15.1.2. About Hubs

Distributed Collector also allows you to set up new hubs. A *hub* represents an instance of the `zenhub` daemon, through which all collector daemons communicate with the object and event databases.

All collectors must belong to exactly one hub; however, a hub can have many collectors associated with it. All hubs (and indirectly all collectors) refer to the same object and event databases. Typically, only very large systems with more than five collectors (or more than 1,500 devices) benefit from multiple hubs.

Hubs manage configuration data and pass it to the collectors. Hubs also take data from the collectors and pass it to the Zenoss DataStore. Multiple hubs can be a more efficient way to manage larger deployments, as they help distribute the computing resources when configuration changes are made. They further remove the potential for configuration changes to be a bottleneck to gathering and processing data.

### 15.1.3. Typical Usage Scenarios for Distributed Monitoring

The correct distributed strategy for your environment depends on network security restrictions, as well as scale. Contact Zenoss Support if you are unsure which option best suits your enterprise.

Typical setup scenarios for using multiple hubs and collectors are shown in the following table:

Hub	Collector	Description
Local hub	Local collector	This setup requires only a single server, and is the most common Resource Manager deployment type. You would most likely use this configuration if you need to monitor fewer than 1000 devices, and your master Resource Manager server has direct network access to all of the monitored devices.

Hub	Collector	Description
Local hub	Remote collector	This setup requires two servers, and is the most basic distributed setup. The primary benefit of this configuration over the local hub/local collector configuration is that the master server does no collection. This frees resources, optimizing the server's ability to perform its central role of database server and Web interface.
Local hub	Multiple remote collectors	This is the most common distributed Resource Manager configuration. You might use this configuration to scale Resource Manager to monitor more than 1000 devices. Depending on the hardware of the collectors, it is possible to monitor up to 1000 devices for each collector using this configuration. You might also use this configuration to handle differing network security policies. Often, your master Resource Manager server will not have access to all of the devices you need to monitor. In this case you can set up a remote collector with the required network access.
Multiple remote hubs	Multiple remote collectors	This configuration is for large installations only. For cases in which you have more than five collectors, you should consider deploying one or more hub servers to handle them.

Table 15.1. Distributed Monitoring Use Scenarios

### 15.1.4. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.4 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DistributedCollector

Table 15.2. Prerequisites

### 15.1.5. Navigating Collectors and Hubs

To view and manage collectors and hubs:

1. Log in as the Resource Manager user.
2. From the navigation menu, select Advanced > Collectors.

The Collectors page appears.

Name	Creation Time	Last Modification
<input type="checkbox"/> localhost	2011/07/28 19:55:11	2011/07/28 19:56:43
<a href="#">localhost</a>	2011/06/24 15:36:42	2011/07/28 19:56:43

Figure 15.1. Collectors Page

The page lists existing hubs and collectors in hierarchical form. Hubs are listed at the top level; collectors are nested below the hub to which they belong.

From this page, you can:

- Add a hub
- Delete a hub (which also deletes its associated collectors)
- View and edit hub settings

- Configure associated monitoring templates

Select a hub to display details and configuration options. From here, you can:

- Update a hub
- Add and delete collectors

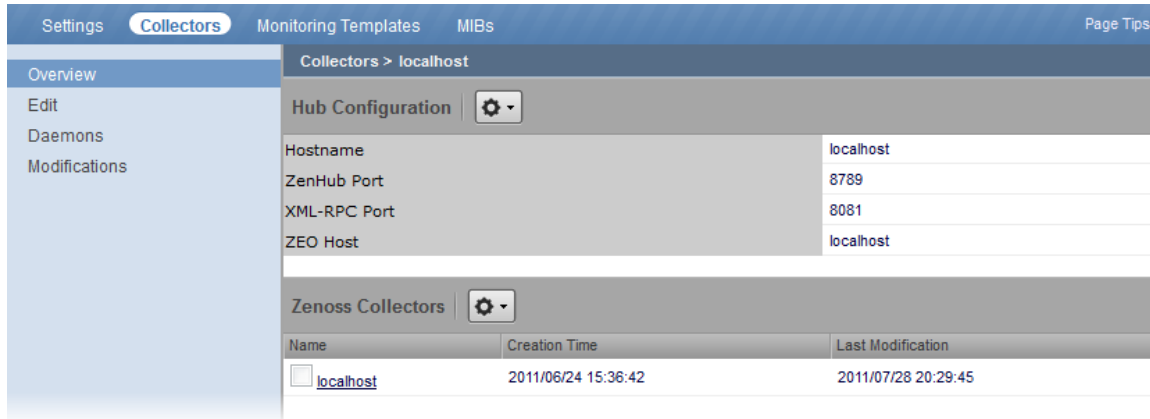


Figure 15.2. Collectors Page - Overview

In the left panel, select **Daemons** to display details about the `zenhub` daemon that belongs to the collector. Links adjacent to the daemon name allow you to view the daemon log, and view and edit its configuration. Use the buttons to the right of the daemon name to stop, start, and restart it.

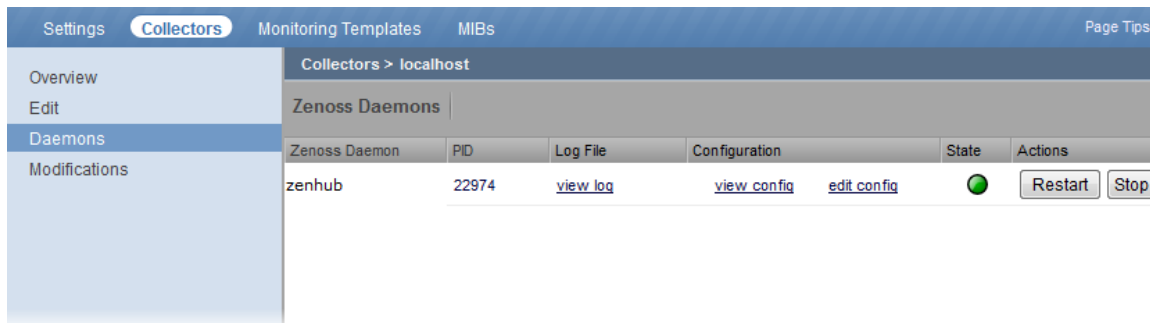


Figure 15.3. Collectors Page - Daemons

## 15.2. Deploying Collectors

The following sections offer information and procedures for:

- Installing prerequisites
- Deploying remote collectors
- Deploying local collectors

### 15.2.1. Installing Prerequisites

Follow these procedures to install:

- RRDtool 1.4.7
- Additional required packages

#### 15.2.1.1. Installing RRDtool

Use one of the following procedures, depending on your architecture, to install RRDtool.

### 15.2.1.1.1. RHEL 5 or CentOS 5

1. Download RRDtool and its dependencies:

```
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rpmforge-release/\
rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el5.rf.x86_64.rpm
rpm -ivh rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el5.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Run the Yellowdog Updated, Modified (YUM) to install RRDtool:

```
yum install rrdtool-1.4.7
```

### 15.2.1.1.2. RHEL 6 or CentOS 6

1. Download and install the RRDtool prerequisites and dependencies:

```
yum install xorg-x11-fonts-Type1 ruby libdbi
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rpmforge-release/\
rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
rpm -ivh rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Download the RRDtool RPMs:

```
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rrdtool/rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rrdtool/perl-rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

3. Run the Yellowdog Updated, Modified (YUM) to install RRDtool:

```
yum localinstall rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm \
perl-rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

### 15.2.1.2. Installing Additional Required Packages

Install these packages on the RHEL or CentOS server that will become the collector:

```
yum -y install net-snmp net-snmp-utils gmp libgomp libgcj.x86_64 libxslt \
liberation-fonts sysstat
```

## 15.2.2. Deploying Remote Collectors

The following sections provide detailed information needed to deploy remote collectors:

- Requirements
- Limitations
- Overriding Daemons
- Deployment

### 15.2.2.1. Requirements

Remote collector deployments must meet these requirements:

- The operating system running on the server to be deployed as a remote collector must be the same version and platform as that running on the Resource Manager master. (For example, if your Resource Manager master is CentOS 5 64-bit, then the collector must also be CentOS 5 64-bit.)
- By default, port 8789 must be open so that the collector and ZenHub can communicate (both ways). This may differ if you have configured ZenHub to run on a different port.
- The Resource Manager server host name must be a resolvable, fully qualified domain name or IP address.
- You must update all collectors after you:
  - Update your version of Resource Manager
  - Install patches
  - Install, update, or remove ZenPacks
  - Change the zenhub port of an associated hub

### 15.2.2.2. Limitations

The system is not compatible with Security-Enhanced Linux (SELinux) in enforcing mode. You must disable enforcing mode for all platforms running the Resource Manager daemons (Resource Manager master, remote hubs, and remote collectors).

To disable enforcing mode:

1. Edit the `/etc/selinux/config` file.
2. Set the following line:

```
SELINUX=disabled
```

#### Note

You also can disable enforcing mode temporarily (avoiding the need to reboot) with the command:

```
echo 0 > /selinux/enforce
```

For more information about SELinux, browse to <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SELinux>, or to the SELinux home page at <http://www.nsa.gov/research/selinux/index.shtml>.

### 15.2.2.3. Overriding Daemons on Remote Collectors

You can optionally specify which daemons are configured on a remote collector. Only the listed daemons are configured at deployment.

Before deploying the remote collector (or when reconfiguring an existing collector):

1. Create a `$/ZENHOME/etc/collectordaemons.txt` file.
2. Add the names of daemons you want to configure on the remote collector. List one daemon on each line, using the real daemon name (such as `zencommand` or `zenperfsnmp`).

#### Note

Alternatively, you can add a `collectordaemons.txt` file on each remote machine. These files will be used instead of the file on the localhost.

### 15.2.2.4. Deployment

Follow these steps to deploy a remote collector:

1. Browse to the Resource Manager master, and then log in to the user interface.
2. Select **Advanced > Collectors** from the navigation bar.
3. Click the name of the hub for your Resource Manager master. (In a default installation, this is `localhost`.)
4. On the Overview page, select **Add Collector** from the Action menu.

The Add Collector page appears. From here, you can use one of several methods to access the remote host.

#### 15.2.2.4.1. Root User Password

Follow these steps to install a remote collector using a root password for access to the remote host.

#### Note

You must set a password for the root user on a server before deploying a collector to it.

1. Select the **Install remotely** option.
2. Select the **root password** option.

**Add Collector**

Install remotely
 

- root user password
- root user SSH keys
- zenoss user SSH keys

Install locally

Install an additional collector on a remote host using the root password for the remote host. Root and zenoss user SSH keys will be established to access the remote host.

Collector ID:

Host:

Root Password:

**ADD COLLECTOR**

Figure 15.4. Install Remote Collector (Root Password)

3. Enter or change setup details:

Field Name	Description
Collector ID	Enter the name for the collector as it will be identified in the system. This name will be used to prefix the control scripts on the collector. If the ID is <code>coll11</code> , then scripts will be named <code>coll11_zenperfsnmp</code> .
Host	Enter the name of the host for the collector. This must be a fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname.
Root Password	Enter the password for the root user on the Host. The root password is not stored; it is used to configure a pre-shared key between the main server and the remote collector.

Table 15.3. Add New Collector Fields

### Note

If you are creating another collector on the server, enter the `localhost` rather than the IP address of the server.

4. Click **Add Collector**. The system displays log output from the creation of the new collector. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), The system displays the final entry "navigate to *CollectorName*." Click the link to go to the overview page for the new collector.

### 15.2.2.4.2. Root SSH Keys

To install a remote collector, using existing root SSH keys for access to the remote host:

1. Select the Install remotely option.
2. Select the root SSH keys option.

**Add Collector**

Install remotely

- root user password
- root user SSH keys
- zenoss user SSH keys

Install locally

Install an additional collector on a remote host using a pre-existing root SSH key for the remote host. Zenoss user SSH keys will be established to access the remote host.

Collector ID:

Host:

**ADD COLLECTOR**

Figure 15.5. Install Remote Collector (Root SSH Keys)

3. Enter or change setup details:

Field Name	Description
Collector ID	Enter the name for the collector as it will be identified in the system. This name will be used to prefix the control scripts on the collector. If the ID is <code>coll11</code> , then scripts will be named <code>coll11_zenperfsnmp</code> .
Host	Enter the name of the host for the collector. This must be a fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname.

Table 15.4. Add New Collector Fields

#### Note

If you are creating another collector on the server, enter the `localhost` rather than the IP address of the server.

4. Click **Add Collector**. The system displays log output from the creation of the new collector. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), the system displays the final entry "navigate to *CollectorName*." Click the link to go to the overview page for the new collector.

### 15.2.2.4.3. Resource Manager SSH Keys

If you choose to set up a collector using Resource Manager SSH keys, the system will attempt to install by using the zenoss user. To successfully install a collector using these keys (without root access), these prerequisite conditions must be met:

- zenoss user SSH keys must be set up between the Resource Manager server and the target.
- You must be running the RPM distribution.
- Resource Manager core RPM must be installed on the target (remote) machine.

**Tip:** When installing the RPM on the remote machine, **do not start** the system.

Follow these steps to install a remote collector, using Resource Manager SSH keys for access to the remote host.

**Note**

For detailed steps for creating SSH keys, see the section titled "Setting Up SSH Keys for Distributed Collector."

1. Select the Install remotely option.
2. Select the zenoss SSH Keys option.

**Add Collector**

Install remotely
 

- root user password
- root user SSH keys
- zenoss user SSH keys

Install locally

Install an additional collector on a remote host using a pre-existing zenoss SSH key for the remote host. This option requires a pre-existing Resource Manager instance on the remote host. Using this option does not require root access to the remote host. See the Resource Manager Extended Monitoring guide for more information.

Collector ID:

Host:

**ADD COLLECTOR**

Figure 15.6. Install Remote Collector (Resource Manager SSH Keys)

3. Enter or change setup details:

Field Name	Description
Collector ID	Enter the name for the collector as it will be identified in the system. This name will be used to prefix the control scripts on the collector. If the ID is <code>coll11</code> , then scripts will be named <code>coll11_zenperfsnmp</code> .



Field Name	Description
Host	Enter the name of the host for the collector. This must be a fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname.

Table 15.5. Add New Collector Fields

**Note**

If you are creating another collector on the server, enter the `localhost` rather than the IP address of the server.

4. Click **Add Collector**. The system displays log output from the creation of the new collector. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), The system displays the final entry "navigate to *CollectorName*." Click the link to go to the overview page for the new collector.

**15.2.3. Deploying Local Collectors**

Follow these steps to install a local collector:

1. Browse to the Resource Manager master, and then log in to the user interface.
2. Select Advanced > Collectors from the navigation bar.
3. Click the name of the hub for your Resource Manager master. (In a default installation, this is `localhost`.)
4. On the Overview page, select Add Collector from the Action menu.

The Add Collector page appears.

5. Select the Install locally option.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Collector' page. At the top, there is a header 'Add Collector'. Below it, there are two main options: 'Install remotely' and 'Install locally'. Under 'Install remotely', there are three sub-options: 'root user password', 'root user SSH keys', and 'zenoss user SSH keys'. The 'Install locally' option is selected. Below this, there is a light blue box containing the text 'Install an additional collector on the local Resource Manager Master.' and a form field labeled 'Collector ID:'. At the bottom of the page, there is a dark button labeled 'ADD COLLECTOR'.

Figure 15.7. Install Locally

6. Enter or change setup details:

Field Name	Description
Collector ID	Enter the name for the collector as it will be identified in the system. This name will be used to prefix the control scripts on the collector. If the ID is <code>coll11</code> , then scripts will be named <code>coll11_zenperfsnmp</code> .

Table 15.6. Add New Collector Fields

- Click **Add Collector**. The system displays log output from the creation of the new collector. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), click the link at the bottom of the page to go to the overview page for the new collector.

## 15.3. Updating Collectors

You must update all collectors after you:

- Update your version of Resource Manager
- Install patches
- Install, update, or remove ZenPacks
- Change the zenhub port of an associated hub

To update a collector:

- From the navigation menu, select Advanced > Collectors.
- Select the collector to display its Overview page.
- Select Update Collector from the Action menu.

Resource Manager copies the most recent code and ZenPacks to the server, and restarts the daemons running there.

### 15.3.1. Using nginx as a Reverse Proxy

After installing the WebScale ZenPack (installed by default when you install Resource Manager), existing collectors must be configured to use the nginx reverse proxy. Otherwise, the host name of the collector cannot be resolved from the master, and zenwebserver (nginx) will not start.

To configure a collector to use the reverse proxy, set the render url property to:

```
/remote-collector/CollectorID
```

where *CollectorID* is the ID of the collector.

## 15.4. Backing Up Remote Collector Performance Data

Resource Manager does not automatically back up remote collector performance data (RRD files). To back up this data, set up a `cron` job on the remote collector. The `cron` job should invoke `zenbackup` with these options:

```
zenbackup --no-eventsdb --no-zodb
```

Old backup data is not automatically deleted; therefore, the backup solution you use to save the data should remove the backup file when it is no longer needed.

## 15.5. Configuring Collector Data Storage

You can configure the amount of data stored by RRDcached for each collector. Edit one or more options in the `zenrrdcached.conf` file; options are:

- **write\_threads** *Value* - Specifies the number of threads for writing files. By default, this value is 4.
- **write\_timeout** *Value* - Specifies the frequency at which data is written to disk. By default, this value is 300 seconds.
- **write\_delay** *Value* - Specifies the delay for writing. By default, this value is 0 seconds.
- **flush\_timeout** *Value* - Specifies the timeout value for flushing old data. By default, this value is 3600 seconds.

## 15.6. Deleting Collectors

When you delete a collector, its devices are left without an assigned collector. Zenoss recommends that you reassign assigned devices prior to deleting a collector.

To delete a collector, click the name of the hub where the collector exists from the main collectors page. The Hub overview page appears. From the list of Collectors, select the collector you want to delete. From the Action menu, select Delete Collector.

When you delete collectors using this Resource Manager instance, they are not removed or "uninstalled" in any way from the collector device. They continue to exist on the device until manually removed through the file system.

## 15.7. Adding Devices to Collectors

Adding devices to collectors occurs when you add the device to Resource Manager.

1. Select Add a Single Device from  (Add Device).

The Add a Single Device page appears.

2. From the Collector list of options, select the collector you want to use to collect data for the device.

After you select the collector, the device appears in the Devices list, located at the bottom of the collector overview page.

### 15.7.1. Moving Devices Between Collectors

You can move devices from one collector to another.

1. Select one or more device rows in the device list.
2. Select Set Collector from the Actions list of options.
3. Select a collector, and then click **OK**.

Resource Manager moves the devices to the selected collector.

#### 15.7.1.1. Moving Performance Data Between Collectors

If you move devices between collectors, you also can select an option choose to move their associated performance data.

## 15.8. Managing Collector Daemons

Collector daemons appear on the Daemons page for each collector, and can be started, stopped and restarted from there.

Only one `zentrapp` instance can be run on a server, as it must bind to the SNMP trap port (162). If you install multiple collectors on the same server, you must assign different port numbers to additional `zentrapp` daemons. Attempting to run additional `zentrapp` daemons using the same port will cause them to fail at startup.

Each collector installs the `zenrender` daemon with the rest of the collector package. If multiple collectors are installed on the same host, then the `zenrender` daemon will attempt to run for each collector. Since each `zenrender` daemon attempts to bind to the same port, all but the first daemon will fail to start. This is a problem for HA/failover environments, since failure detection systems will detect these stopped `zenrender` daemons and assume they are down. (ZEN-2967)

The remedy for this is to assign each `zenrender` daemon (beyond the first) its own unique port. This is accomplished by adding the following line to each `Collector_zenrender.conf` on your collector's host (in `$ZENHOME/etc`), where `Collector` is the collector name:

```
http-port 809X
```

X is a number greater than 1 and unique among multiple collectors.

### Note

The ports you choose for the additional collectors are arbitrary, as they are not used. However, you must leave at least one `zenrender` daemon using the default port (8091).

## 15.9. Deploying Hubs

The following sections offer information and procedures for:

- Installing prerequisites
- Deploying remote hubs

### 15.9.1. Install Prerequisites

Follow these procedures to install:

- Zenoss DataStore
- RRDtool 1.4.7
- Additional required packages

#### 15.9.1.1. Installing the Zenoss DataStore

Install the Zenoss DataStore. Depending on your architecture, use one of the following commands.

- RHEL 5 or CentOS5:

```
rpm -ivh zends-5.5.15-1.Version.el5.x86_64.rpm
```

- RHEL 6 or CentOS6:

```
rpm -ivh zends-5.5.15-1.Version.el6.x86_64.rpm
```

#### 15.9.1.2. Installing RRDtool

Use one of the following procedures, depending on your architecture, to install RRDtool.

##### 15.9.1.2.1. RHEL 5 or CentOS 5

1. Download RRDtool and its dependencies:

```
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rpmforge-release/\
rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el5.rf.x86_64.rpm
rpm -ivh rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el5.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Run the Yellowdog Updated, Modified (YUM) to install RRDtool:

```
yum install rrdtool-1.4.7
```

##### 15.9.1.2.2. RHEL 6 or CentOS 6

1. Download and install the RRDtool prerequisites and dependencies:

```
yum install xorg-x11-fonts-Type1 ruby libdbi
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rpmforge-release/\
rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
rpm -ivh rpmforge-release-0.5.2-2.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

## 2. Download the RRDtool RPMs:

```
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rrdtool/rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
wget http://pkgs.repoforge.org/rrdtool/perl-rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

## 3. Run the Yellowdog Updated, Modified (YUM) to install RRDtool:

```
yum localinstall rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm \
perl-rrdtool-1.4.7-1.el6.rf.x86_64.rpm
```

### 15.9.1.3. Installing Additional Required Packages

Install these packages on the RHEL or CentOS server that will become the hub. Use the following command:

```
yum -y install mysql-client net-snmp net-snmp-utils gmp libgomp libgcj \
liberation-fonts sysstat
```

## 15.9.2. Deploying Remote Hubs

The following sections provide detailed information needed to deploy hubs:

- Requirements
- Limitations
- Configuring Zenoss DataStore
- Deployment

### 15.9.2.1. Requirements

Hub deployments must meet these requirements:

- The Resource Manager server hostname must be a resolvable, fully qualified domain name or IP address.
- Any server hosting a remote hub must have the Zenoss DataStore installed (but not running). The Zenoss DataStore is needed for a client library that allows MySQL connections.
- Remote hubs need to communicate on these default Resource Manager ports:
  - Port 13306 - Zenoss DataStore
  - Port 8084 - Resource Manager events system
  - Port 5672 - Resource Manager queuing system
- You must update all hubs after you:
  - Update your version of Resource Manager
  - Install patches
  - Install, update, or remove ZenPacks

### 15.9.2.2. Limitations

The system is not compatible with Security-Enhanced Linux (SELinux) in enforcing mode. You must disable enforcing mode for all platforms running the Resource Manager daemons (master, remote hubs, and remote collectors).

To disable enforcing mode:

1. Edit the `/etc/selinux/config` file.
2. Set the following line:

```
SELINUX=disabled
```

## Note

You also can disable enforcing mode temporarily (avoiding the need to reboot) with the command:

```
echo 0 > /selinux/enforce
```

For more information about SELinux, browse to <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SELinux>, or to the SELinux home page at <http://www.nsa.gov/research/selinux/index.shtml>.

### 15.9.2.3. Configuring Zenoss DataStore for Remote Hubs

Hubs on remote servers need access to the Zenoss DataStore. By default this is set to localhost, but will not work for remote hubs. Distributed collector attempts to set this field to the fully qualified domain name of the Resource Manager server when it is installed. If remote hubs appear to be having trouble connecting to the Zenoss DataStore, then check the host value in `$ZENHOME/etc/global.conf` to make sure it can be reached from the server the hub is on.

Another aspect of remote hubs connecting to the Zenoss DataStore is privileges. For a hub to connect to the database, the user specified in the `$ZENHOME/etc/global.conf` file for `mysqluser` must be granted privileges to connect to the Zenoss DataStore from the remote server. If a remote hub is logging error messages that indicate it is not allowed to connect from the given host, then these privileges are likely not set up correctly. Granting of these privileges requires a fully qualified domain name for the remote server.

Before adding a hub, ensure grants and permissions are set correctly. For your Resource Manager master, run these commands:

```
GRANT SELECT on mysql.user to zenoss@'%' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON zenoss_zep.* to zenoss@'%' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON zodb.* to zenoss@'%' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

For every remote Zenhub server, run these commands in the Zenoss DataStore, replacing *RemoteHubFQDN* with the appropriate hostname for each server:

```
GRANT SELECT on mysql.user to zenoss@'RemoteHubFQDN' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON zenoss_zep.* to zenoss@'RemoteHubFQDN' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON zodb.* to zenoss@'RemoteHubFQDN' IDENTIFIED BY "zenoss";
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

### 15.9.2.4. Deployment

When deploying a remote hub, you can select one of several options, using:

- Root password to the remote host
- Pre-existing root SSH keys
- Resource Manager SSH keys (use only for RPM installations)

To add a hub, from the main Collectors page, select Add Hub from the Action menu.

The Add Hub page appears.

#### 15.9.2.4.1. Install Remotely (Root Password)

Follow these steps to install a remote hub, using a root password for access to the remote host.

## Note

You must set a password for the root user on a server before deploying a hub to it.

1. Select the root password option.

Figure 15.8. Install Remote Hub (Root Password)

2. Enter or change setup details:

- **Hub ID** - Enter a name for the new hub. The name can be any unique combination of letters, digits, and dashes.
- **Host** - Enter the fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname of the server on which the new hub will run.
- **Root Password** - Enter the root user password for the server you specified in the Host field.
- **Port** - Enter the port number on which the hub should listen for collectors. The default port is 8790.
- **Hub Password** - Enter the hub password that the collectors will use to log in to this hub. The default password is "zenoss."
- **XML RPC Port** - Specify the port on which the hub should listen for xml-rpc requests from the collectors or other API clients.

3. Click **Add Hub**.

The system displays log output from the creation of the new hub. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), click the link at the bottom of the page to go to the overview page for the new hub.

#### 15.9.2.4.2. Install Remotely (Root SSH Keys)

To install a remote hub, using existing root SSH keys for access to the remote host:

1. Select the root SSH keys option.

Figure 15.9. Install Remote Hub (Root SSH Keys)

2. Enter or change setup details:

- **Hub ID** - Enter a name for the new hub. The name can be any unique combination of letters, digits, and dashes.
- **Host** - Enter the fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname of the server on which the new hub will run.
- **Port** - Enter the port number on which the hub should listen for collectors. The default port is 8790.
- **Hub Password** - Enter the hub password that the collectors will use to log in to this hub. The default password is "zenoss."
- **XML RPC Port** - Specify the port on which the hub should listen for xml-rpc requests from the collectors or other API clients.

3. Click **Add Hub**.

The system displays log output from the creation of the new hub. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), click the link at the bottom of the page to go to the overview page for the new hub.

#### 15.9.2.4.3. Install Remotely (zenoss SSH Keys)

If you choose to set up a hub using zenoss SSH keys, Resource Manager will attempt to install by using the zenoss user. To successfully install a hub using these keys (without root access), these prerequisite conditions must be met:

- zenoss user SSH keys must be set up between the Resource Manager server and the target. The target must have a zenoss user.
- ZENHOME directory must be present on the remote machine.
- zensocket/pyraw must be present on the remote machine, and the setuid bits must be set.
- The nmap program must be made setuid root.

**Tip:** The best way to meet the prerequisite conditions is to install the Resource Manager RPM on the remote machine. After installation, **do not start** Resource Manager.

Follow these steps to install a remote hub, using Resource Manager SSH keys for access to the remote host.



**Note**

For detailed steps for creating SSH keys, see the section titled "Setting Up SSH Keys for Distributed Collector."

1. Select the zenoss SSH keys option.

Figure 15.10. Install Remote Hub (Resource Manager SSH Keys)

2. Enter or change setup details:
  - **Hub ID** - Enter a name for the new hub. The name can be any unique combination of letters, digits, and dashes.
  - **Host** - Enter the fully qualified domain name, IP address, or resolvable hostname of the server on which the new hub will run.
  - **Port** - Enter the port number on which the hub should listen for collectors. The default port is 8790.
  - **Hub Password** - Enter the hub password that the collectors will use to log in to this hub. The default password is "zenoss."
  - **XML RPC Port** - Specify the port on which the hub should listen for xml-rpc requests from the collectors or other API clients.
3. Click **Add Hub**.

The system displays log output from the creation of the new hub. When fully configured (this may require several minutes), click the link at the bottom of the page to go to the overview page for the new hub.

### 15.9.3. Setting Up SSH Keys for Distributed Collector

Follow these instructions to create SSH keys for use when setting up hubs and collectors.

These instructions assume you are using openssh. For more information, refer to the ssh-keygen man pages.

1. Use the following commands to generate an openssh RSA key pair for the zenoss user:

```
mkdir $HOME/.ssh
ssh-keygen -t rsa -f $HOME/.ssh/id_rsa -P ""
```

2. Lock down the key pair:

```
chmod 700 $HOME/.ssh
```

```
chmod go-rwx $HOME/.ssh/*
```

3. Copy the generated public key `$HOME/.ssh/id_rsa.pub` file to the remote machine. On the remote machine, add the public key to the `authorized_keys` file in the account the user wants to log in to by using the SSH key.
  - a. If `$HOME/.ssh` does not exist on the target machine, then create it with these commands:

```
mkdir ~/.ssh  
chmod 700 ~/.ssh
```

- b. Add the key:

```
cat id_rsa.pub >> $HOME/.ssh/authorized_keys  
chmod 600 $HOME/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

### Note

You cannot use keys with a pass phrase with Resource Manager.

## 15.9.4. Moving a Collector to a New Hub

You can use the `dc-admin` command line tool to move a collector to a new hub, as follows:

```
dc-admin move-collector CollectorID HubID
```

where *CollectorID* is the ID of the collector and *HubID* is the ID of the hub.

---

# Chapter 16. Domain Name System

## 16.1. About

The DigMonitor and DNSMonitor ZenPacks monitor the availability and response time of a DNS request.

## 16.2. DigMonitor

The DigMonitor ZenPack uses the `check_dig` Nagios plugin, which uses the `dig` command.

### 16.2.1. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DigMonitor

Table 16.1. DigMonitor Prerequisites

### 16.2.2. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring by the system:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the DigMonitor template to the list of selected templates, and then click **OK**.

The DigMonitor template appears under Monitoring Templates.

6. Select the DigMonitor template in the left panel, and change options as needed.

Option	Description
DNS Server	Name server against which the <b>dig</b> command should be run. The default is the device host name.
Port	Port on which the name server is listening. This is normally port 53.
Record Name	Name of the record you want to look up. The default is zenoss.com.
Record Type	DNS record type (for example, A, MX, CNAME).

Table 16.2. DigMonitor Data Source Options

## 16.3. DNSMonitor

The DNSMonitor ZenPack uses the `check_dns` Nagios plugin, which uses the `nslookup` command.

### 16.3.1. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DNSMonitor

Table 16.3. DNSMonitor Prerequisites

### 16.3.2. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring by the system:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the DNSMonitor template to the list of selected templates, and then click **OK**.

The DNSMonitor template appears under Monitoring Templates.

6. Select the DNSMonitor template in the left panel, and change options as needed.

Option	Description
DNS Server	Name server against which the <b>nslookup</b> command should be run. If empty (the default), the default DNS server or servers in <code>/etc/resolve.conf</code> are used.
Port	Port on which the name server is listening. This is normally port 53.
Host Name	Host name to resolve. The default is the device ID.
Expected IP Address	IP address to which the host name is expected to resolve.

Table 16.4. DNSMonitor Data Source Options

## 16.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 16.5. Daemons

# Chapter 17. Dynamic Service View

## 17.1. About

Dynamic Service View ("dynamic view") is a visualization of system objects and their relationships to other objects. You can access the dynamic view from groups, systems, and locations. Depending on the object type, different relationships are illustrated.

Each dynamic view shows related objects in a graph. Each object in that graph displays its associated event information.

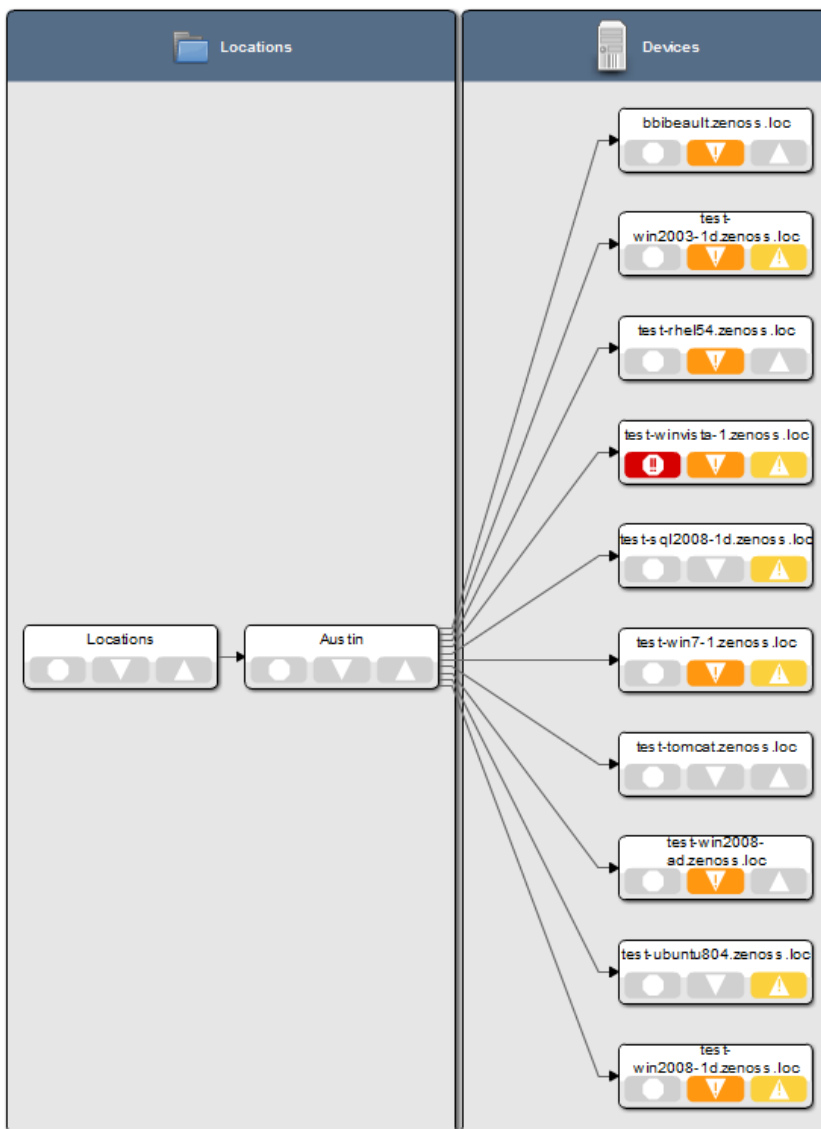


Figure 17.1. Dynamic Service View: Locations Graph

When you click an object in the graph, the "inspector" panel appears. This panel provides detailed information about the object and links directly to it. Information that appears in the inspector depends on the object type selected.

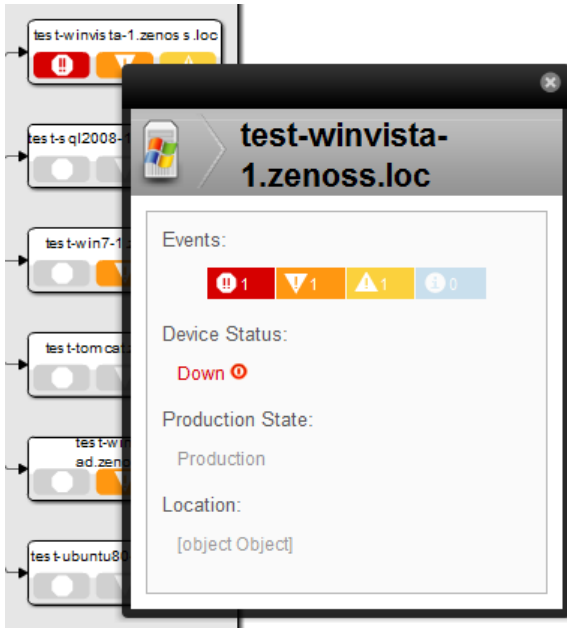


Figure 17.2. Dynamic Service View: Inspector Panel

View controls appear to the right of the graph. These allow you to adjust your view:

- **Overview** - Toggles display on and off of the graph overview illustration.
- **Magnifier** - Toggles on and off the magnifier, which allows you to magnify selected portions of the graph.
- **Zoom In** - Zooms in on the graph.
- **Zoom Out** - Zooms out on the graph.
- **Fit View** - Fits the graph to the browser page.
- **Refresh** - Refreshes the graph.

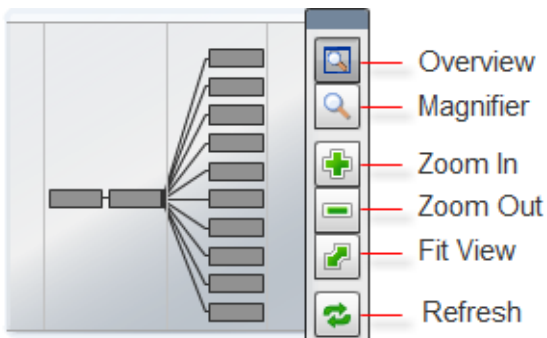


Figure 17.3. Dynamic View: View Controls

### 17.1.1. Dynamic View of Organizers

The dynamic view of organizers shows objects that can impact the status of the organizer, such as other organizers and devices. This view also shows relationships between devices and a virtual infrastructure, such as VMware or Cisco UCS objects monitored by the system, as well as storage information.

To access the dynamic view for an organizer (such as a group, system, or location):

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, select the organizer in the devices hierarchy.
2. Click **Details**.
3. Select Dynamic Service View.

## 17.1.2. Dynamic View of Devices

The dynamic view of devices shows the relationship between a device and monitored components.

To access the dynamic view for a device:

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, click a device in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

2. Select Dynamic Service View in the left panel.

### 17.1.2.1. Dynamic View of Cisco UCS Devices

On Cisco UCS devices, the dynamic view shows the components and relationships that make up a Cisco UCS cluster.

### 17.1.2.2. Dynamic View of VMware Hosts

On VMware Hosts (ESX servers), the dynamic view shows the relative VMware elements that are connected to the host, such as:

- VMs that currently are running on the Host
- Data stores that are mounted by the Host
- Clusters to which the Host belongs

### 17.1.2.3. Dynamic View of Storage Devices

On storage devices, such as NetApp Filers, there are two dynamic views:

- **Physical Storage View** - Shows the device's storage enclosures and associated hard disks.
- **Logical Storage View** - Shows the logical storage arrangement that the storage device presents, such as file systems and raid groups.

## 17.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 3.0 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DynamicView
Other	Oracle/Sun JRE 1.5 or later, Flash-enabled Web browser

Table 17.1. Prerequisites

## 17.3. Enabling

After installing the DynamicView ZenPack, you must restart the system. The `zenjserver` daemon must be running for dynamic views to be visible.

## 17.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Display	<code>zenjserver</code>

Table 17.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 18. Enterprise Collector

## 18.1. About

The Enterprise Collector ZenPack allows collector daemons to start and monitor devices, even if a connection to ZenHub is not available when the daemon starts.

Enterprise Collector enables configuration caching for these collector daemons:

- zenwin
- zeneventlog
- zenwinperf
- zenprocess

Data and events are cached locally and are sent to ZenHub as needed after a connection is re-established. Cached configuration data is stored in `$ZENHOME/perf/Daemons/MonitorName/DaemonName-Suffix`, where *Suffix* is one of:

- configs.db
- properties.pickle
- threshold-classes.pickle
- thresholds.pickle

For example:

```
[zenoss@zenosst zenpacks]$ ls $ZENHOME/perf/Daemons/localhost/zeneventlog*
/opt/zenoss/perf/Daemons/localhost/zeneventlog-configs.db
/opt/zenoss/perf/Daemons/localhost/zeneventlog-properties.pickle
/opt/zenoss/perf/Daemons/localhost/zeneventlog-threshold-classes.pickle
/opt/zenoss/perf/Daemons/localhost/zeneventlog-thresholds.pickle
```

Each time a collector daemon successfully retrieves configuration information from ZenHub, it updates the cached files. This happens at startup, and then every 20 minutes to 6 hours (depending on the daemon and its configuration). A daemon must successfully connect once before it can use the cached files if ZenHub is not available.

The cached files are considered transient, and can be deleted without harm to the system.

### 18.1.1. ZenHub Configuration Options

These options apply to all collector daemons and control how those daemons request configurations from ZenHub:

- **configsipsize** -- If set to a non-zero value, the daemon requests *n* device configurations from ZenHub (where *n* is the value for configsipsize). The default value is 25.

By requesting device configurations in batches, the option allows the daemon to start monitoring devices as the device configuration is loaded. Also, the smaller batches prevent ZenHub from locking up a process for long periods of time.

If set to a value of 0, then all configurations are downloaded at once; monitoring does not commence until all configurations have been loaded by the collector. On systems with a large number of devices, the collector may be waiting a long time to download all the configurations.

- **configsipdelay** -- Controls how many seconds (at most) to wait between making device configuration requests. This option is ignored if the value of configsipsize is 0. The default value is 1.

```
--configsipsize=CONFIGSIPSIZE
Max number of device configurations to load at once,
```



```
default 25 (0 == all devices)

--configsipdelay=CONFIGSIPDELAY
    Delay in seconds between device configurations
    loading, default 1
```

## 18.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.EnterpriseCollector

Table 18.1. Enterprise Collector Prerequisites

## 18.3. Enabling Enterprise Collector

After installing the Enterprise Collector ZenPack, restart Resource Manager and all Resource Manager daemons (including `zenhub`).

---

# Chapter 19. Enterprise Linux

## 19.1. About

The EnterpriseLinux ZenPack extends the capabilities of the LinuxMonitor ZenPack and enables Resource Manager to use Secure Shell (SSH) to monitor Linux hosts. Resource Manager models and monitors devices placed in the `/Server/SSH/Linux` device class by running commands and parsing the output. Parsing of command output is performed on the Resource Manager server or on a distributed collector. The account used to monitor the device does not require root access or special privileges for the default modeler plugins.

## 19.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.4 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.LinuxMonitor, ZenPacks.zenoss.EnterpriseLinux


Table 19.1. Enterprise Linux Prerequisites

### Note

If using a distributed collector setup, SSH requires firewall access (default of port 22) from the collector to the monitored server.

## 19.3. Add a Linux Server

The following procedure assumes that the credentials have been set.

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, Select Add a Single Device from  (Add Device).
2. Enter the following information:

Name	Description
Device Name	Linux host to model
Device Class Path	<code>/Server/SSH/Linux</code>
Discovery Protocol	Set this to <code>auto</code> unless adding a device with username/password different than found in the device class. If you set this to <code>none</code> , then you will need to add the credentials (see Section 19.4, “Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials”) and then manually model the device.

Table 19.2. Adding Linux Device Information

3. Click **Add**.

## 19.4. Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials

All Linux servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/SSH/Linux` device class.

### Tip

The SSH monitoring feature will attempt to use key-based authentication before using a configuration properties password value.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.

- If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zCommandUsername	Linux user with privileges to gather performance information.
zCommandPassword	Password for the above user.

Table 19.3. Linux Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

## 19.5. Resolving CHANNEL\_OPEN\_FAILURE Issues

The **zencommand** daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
ERROR zen.SshClient CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE: Authentication failure
WARNING:zen.SshClient:Open of command failed (error code 1): open failed
```

If the **sshd** daemon's log file on the remote device is examined, it may report that the `MAX_SESSIONS` number of connections has been exceeded and that it is denying the connection request. At least in the OpenSSH daemons, this `MAX_SESSIONS` number is a compile-time option and cannot be reset in a configuration file.

In order to work around this limitation of the **sshd** daemon, use the configuration property `zSshConcurrentSessions` to control the number of connections created by **zencommand** to the remote device.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the maximum number of sessions.

Name	Description
zSshConcurrentSessions	Maximum number of sessions supported by the remote device's <code>MAX_SESSIONS</code> parameter. A common value for Linux is 10.

Table 19.4. Concurrent SSH Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

## 19.6. Resolving Command timed out Issues

The **zencommand** daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
WARNING:zen.zencommand:Command timed out on device device_name: command
```

If this occurs, it usually indicates that the remote device has taken too long in order to return results from the commands. In order to increase the amount of time to allow devices to return results, change the configuration property `zCommandCommandTimeout` to a larger value.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the command timeout.

Name	Description
<code>zCommandCommandTimeout</code>	Time in seconds to wait for commands to complete on the remote device.

Table 19.5. SSH Timeout Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

## 19.7. DMIDECODE Modeler Plugin

This plugin allows you to collect and model detailed hardware and kernel information on your Linux devices.

Since the `dmidecode` command requires root privileges, it needs to be run with something like `sudo`. Sample entries required on the sudoers file on each remote device are:

```
Cmnd_Alias DMIDECODE = /usr/sbin/dmidecode
## Allows members of the zenoss group to gather modeling information
Defaults:zenoss !requiretty
%zenoss ALL = (ALL) NOPASSWD: DMIDECODE
```

To use this plugin, add it to the list of collector plugins for the device or device class, and then remodel. For more information on working with Resource Manager plugins, refer to the Resource Manager Administration guide.

## 19.8. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 19.6. Daemons

---

# Chapter 20. Enterprise Reports

## 20.1. About

The EnterpriseReports ZenPack adds new reports to the standard Resource Manager reports. Available reports include:

- Organizer Availability
- Organizer Graphs
- 95th Percentile
- Users Group Membership
- Maintenance Windows
- Notifications and Triggers by Recipient
- Interface Volume
- Event Time to Resolution
- User Event Activity
- Datapoints per Collector
- Interface Utilization
- Data Sources in Use
- Defined Thresholds
- Network Topology
- Customized Performance Templates
- Cisco Inventory
- Guest to Datapools

To access Enterprise reports, select Reports from the Navigation bar. Enterprise reports appear in the left panel.

### 20.1.1. Organizer Availability

Provides the availability percentage of all network organizers in the system. This report can be filtered by organizer, event class, component, and date.

You can report on the availability of device classes, locations, systems, or groups within a defined time frame. This report offers two reporting modes:

- **Averaged** - Defines the organizer as available for the average availability time for all devices contained in it.
- **Coalesced** - Defines the organizer as available only if all devices are available during a certain time period.

Two modes of operation: Averaged - defines the organizer as available for the average availability time for all the devices contained within it. Coalesced - defines availability of the organizer as the available only if all devices are available during a certain time period.

### 20.1.2. 95th Percentile

The 95th Percentile report provides details about all network interfaces in the system, sorted by highest utilization.

95th percentile is a widely used mathematical calculation that evaluates the regular and sustained utilization of a network connection. The 95th percentile method more closely reflects the needed capacity of the link in question than other methods (such as mean or maximum rate).

This report is useful for network capacity planning and billing for either average or 95th percentile bandwidth utilization.

You can filter this report by device name. Enter a complete or partial name (using \* (asterisk) for matching), and then click **Update** to filter the report.

To change the reporting time period, enter Start and End dates (or click **Select** to select dates from a calendar). Click **Update** to refresh the report.

### **20.1.3. Users Group Membership**

Shows all users and the groups to which they belong.

### **20.1.4. Maintenance Windows**

The Maintenance Windows report shows all defined windows that are active during a selected time period.

To change the reporting time period, enter Start and End dates (or click **Select** to select dates from a calendar). Click **Update** to refresh the report.

### **20.1.5. Interface Volume**

The Interface Volume report shows network interface volume. It reports on all network interfaces in the system, sorted by highest utilization. Volume is defined as the total number of bytes transferred during a specific reporting period.

This report is useful for determining billing on total bandwidth consumption.

To change the reporting time period, enter Start and End dates (or click **Select** to select dates from a calendar). Click **Update** to refresh the report.

### **20.1.6. Event Time to Resolution**

The Event Time to Resolution report shows, for each user, the total time taken to acknowledge or clear events. Results are organized by event severity.

This report is helpful for tracking response time SLAs in a NOC-type environment.

### **20.1.7. User Event Activity**

Reports the total number of events acknowledged and cleared, on a per-user basis, during the reporting period.

This report is helpful for tracking operator activity in a NOC-type environment.

### **20.1.8. Datapoints Per Collector**

Shows the number of devices and data points per collector, which is useful for gauging how much monitoring load is on each collector.

### **20.1.9. Defined Thresholds**

The Defined Thresholds report provides details about all thresholds defined in the system. The report links to the target of each threshold. The target can be a device class, individual device, or individual component.

This report is useful for administering the system. You can use it to quickly identify which threshold events can occur within the system, and the severity of those events.

### **20.1.10. Network Topology**

Shows the layout of the network, according to the routes that Resource Manager understands, starting from the collector and ending at the remote devices associated with the collector.

The report does not return data if the host on which the Resource Manager collector is running does not have a device created in the DMD. Create a device representing the collector in the DMD, and then run report again.

An invalid route entry (for example, 'Missing link here' value in the Route column) indicates that Resource Manager cannot determine how to route from one device to another. Correct this by adding a network interface to the model (no new hardware required) and then adding a new route entry from the last device in the route to the device (the IP address shown at the far right of the table).

## 20.2. Viewing Enterprise Reports

After installing the EnterpriseReports ZenPack, you can access Enterprise reports. From the Resource Manager interface, select Reports from the navigation bar.

## 20.3. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.EnterpriseReports

Table 20.1. Enterprise Reports Prerequisites

---

# Chapter 21. Enterprise Security

## 21.1. About

The EnterpriseSecurity ZenPack enhances Resource Manager security by enabling password encryption. Resource Manager stores the passwords it uses to remotely access hosts in a Zope Object Database (ZODB). After enabling this feature, these passwords are encrypted according to the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), with 256-bit key sizes.

By using the password encryption feature, you can help prevent an attacker from accessing your managed systems if he gains access to a backup copy of your ZODB.

## 21.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.EnterpriseSecurity

Table 21.1. Enterprise Security Prerequisites

## 21.3. Enabling Password Encryption

To enable password encryption, install the ZenPack. No other action is required to enable this feature. After ZenPack installation, password encryption is always enabled.

To test that password encryption is functioning correctly, use `grep` to search the `Data.fs` file for the value of one of the password configuration properties. For example, if you set `zCommandPassword` to a value of `wobet51`, you can check that passwords are encrypted by using this command on the Resource Manager server:

```
strings $ZENHOME/var/Data.fs | grep wobet51
```

If the Enterprise Security ZenPack is installed, this command will not return results.



---

# Chapter 22. File Transfer Protocol

## 22.1. About

The FtpMonitor ZenPack monitors connection response time to an FTP server.

## 22.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.FtpMonitor

Table 22.1. FTP Prerequisites

## 22.3. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring of the device:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Select the FTPMonitor template and move it to the list of selected templates.
6. Click **Save**.

The FTPMonitor template appears under Monitoring Templates.

7. Select the FTPMonitor template and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Port	The port to connect to FTP server (default 21)
Send String	Command string to send to the server
Expect String	A string to expect in server response
Mismatch	If the expected string does not match the string returned from the remote server, create an event with one of these states: ok, warn, crit (default: warn)
Quit String	Command to send to the remote server to end the session

Table 22.2. FTPMonitor Basic Data Source Options

## 22.4. Enable Secure Site Monitoring

To enable secure site monitoring:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the devices list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel.

- Select the FTPMonitor template and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Port	The port to connect to FTP server (default 21).
Certificate	Minimum days for which a certificate is valid
Use SSL	Use SSL for the connection

Table 22.3. FTPMonitor Secure Data Source Options

## 22.5. Tuning for Site Responsiveness

- Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
- Click the device name in the devices list.

The device overview page appears.

- Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
- Select the FTPMonitor template and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Timeout	Seconds before connection times out (default: 60)
Refuse	If a TCP/IP connection to the remote service is refused (ie no program is listening at that port) send an event with one of these severity states: ok, warn, crit (default: crit)
Max Bytes	Close the connection once more than this number of bytes are received.
Delay	Seconds to wait between sending string and polling for response
Warning response time (seconds)	Response time to result in a warning status.
Critical response time (seconds)	Response time to result in critical status

Table 22.4. FTPMonitor Tunables Data Source Options

## 22.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 22.5. Daemons

---

# Chapter 23. Foundry Device

## 23.1. About

The FoundryMonitor ZenPack models specific details on Foundry devices, including:

- DRAM
- Serial Number
- Processor
- Product type

This ZenPack monitors memory utilization, as well as CPU utilization averages for 1 minute, 1 second, and 5 seconds.

It also includes all Foundry traps to ensure proper decoding of those traps through `zentrap`.

## 23.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.4 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.FoundryMonitor

Table 23.1. Foundry Prerequisites

## 23.3. Configuring Resource Manager

All Foundry devices must exist in the `/Devices/Network/Foundry` device class.

Follow these steps to configure Resource Manager:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
<code>zSnmpCommunity</code>	Consult with your network administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
<code>zSnmpMonitorIgnore</code>	Set to a value of <code>False</code> .
<code>zSnmpPort</code>	The default port is 161.
<code>zSnmpVer</code>	Set to a value of <code>v2c</code> .

Table 23.2. Foundry Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes. Resource Manager now will begin collecting Foundry device metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for performance graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 23.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>
Traps	<b>zentrap</b>

*Table 23.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 24. HP PC Hardware

## 24.1. About

HPMonitor provides custom modeling of devices running the HP Insight Management Agents. It also contains hardware identification for HP proprietary hardware. The information is collected through the SNMP interface.

The following information is modeled:

- Hardware Model
- Hardware Serial Number
- Operating System
- CPU Information (socket, speed, cache)

## 24.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.HPMonitor
On each remote device	The HP Insight SNMP Management Agent gathers information about the device.

Table 24.1. HP PC Hardware Prerequisites

## 24.3. Enable Enhanced Modeling

To enable enhanced modeling:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Modeler Plugins from the left panel.
4. Click Add Fields to reveal the list of available plugins.
5. Select the following available plugins and drag them to the plugins list:
  - HPCpuMap
  - HPDeviceMap
6. Remove the following plugins by clicking the 'X' button to the right of the plugin:
  - zenoss.snmp.CPUMap
  - zenoss.snmp.DeviceMap
7. Click **Save**.
8. Remodel the device using the new plugins. To do this, select Model Device from the Action menu.

## 24.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	zenmodeler
Performance Collector	zenperfsnmp

Table 24.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 25. Hewlett Packard UNIX

## 25.1. About

The HpuxMonitor ZenPack enables Resource Manager to use Secure Shell (SSH) to monitor Hewlett Packard UNIX (HP-UX) hosts. The system models and monitors devices placed in the `/Server/SSH/HP-UX` device class by running commands and parsing the output. Parsing of command output is performed on the system server (if using a local collector) or on a distributed collector. The account used to monitor the device requires root access or special privileges to access `/usr/bin/adb`.

The HpuxMonitor ZenPack provides:

- File system and process monitoring
- Network interfaces and route modeling
- CPU utilization information
- Hardware information (memory, number of CPUs, and model numbers)
- OS information (OS-level, command-style information)
- Software package information (such as installed software)

## 25.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.HpuxMonitor
Supported HP-UX Releases	HP-UX 11
Supported Processors	PA-RISC, Itanium

Table 25.1. HP-UX Prerequisites

### Note


If using a distributed collector setup, SSH requires firewall access (by default, port 22) from the collector to the monitored server.

## 25.3. Limitations

This ZenPack has not been tested on Itanium systems.

## 25.4. Add an HP-UX Device for Monitoring

These steps assume that credentials have been set.

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, select Add a Single Device from  (Add Device).
2. Enter the following information:

Name	Description
Name or IP	HP-UX host to model
Device Class	<code>/Server/SSH/HP-UX</code>
Model Device	Select this option unless adding a device with a user name and password different than found in the device class. If you de-select this option, then you must add the credentials (see Sec-

Name	Description
	tion 25.5, "Set HP-UX Server Monitoring Credentials"), and then manually model the device.

Table 25.2. Adding HP-UX Device Information

3. Click **Add Device** to add the device.

## 25.5. Set HP-UX Server Monitoring Credentials

All HP-UX servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/SSH/HP-UX` device class.

### Note

The SSH monitoring feature will attempt to use key-based authentication before using a configuration properties password value.

### 25.5.1. Set Credentials for the Device

1. In the Web interface, navigate to the device.
2. In the left panel, select Configuration Properties.
3. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service:

Name	Description
zCommandUsername	HP-UX user with privileges to gather performance information
zCommandPassword	Password for the HP-UX user

Table 25.3. HP-UX Configuration Properties

4. Click **Save** to save your changes.

### 25.5.2. Set Credentials for the Device Class

1. In the Web interface, navigate to the `Devices/Server/SSH/HP-UX` device class.
2. In the left panel, select Configuration Properties.
3. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service. (Refer to the previous table titled "HP-UX Configuration Properties.")
4. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 25.6. Resolving CHANNEL\_OPEN\_FAILURE Issues

The **zencommand** daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
ERROR zen.SshClient CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE: Authentication failure
WARNING:zen.SshClient:Open of command failed (error code 1): open failed
```

If you view the **sshd** daemon's log file on the remote device, you may see that the `MAX_SESSIONS` number of connections has been exceeded and that it is denying the connection request. In the OpenSSH daemons, this `MAX_SESSIONS` number is a compile-time option and cannot be reset in a configuration file.

To work around this **sshd** daemon limitation, use the configuration property `zSshConcurrentSessions` to control the number of connections created by **zencommand** to the remote device:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.

- c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the maximum number of sessions.

Name	Description
zSshConcurrentSessions	Maximum number of sessions supported by the remote device's <code>MAX_SESSIONS</code> parameter. Common values for HP-UX are 2 and 10.

Table 25.4. Concurrent SSH Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 25.7. Resolving Command time out Issues

The **zencommand** daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
WARNING: zen.zencommand:Command timed out on device device_name: command
```

If this occurs, it generally indicates that the remote device has taken too long to return results from the commands. To increase the amount of time to allow devices to return results, change the configuration property `zCommandCommandTimeout` to a larger value:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the command timeout.

Name	Description
zCommandCommandTimeout	Time in seconds to wait for commands to complete on the remote device.

Table 25.5. SSH Timeout Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 25.8. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 25.6. Daemons



---

# Chapter 26. Internet Relay Chat (IRC)

## 26.1. About

ZenPacks.zenoss.IrcdMonitor monitors the number of users connected to an IRC server.

## 26.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.IRCdMonitor

Table 26.1. IRC Prerequisites

## 26.3. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Move the IrcdeMonitor template from the Available list and move it to the Selected list.
6. Click **Save**.

The IrcdMonitor template is added.

7. Click the new template in the left panel and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Port	Specifies the port to connect to the IRC server (default 6667).
warning_num	Creates a warning event when this number of users are seen.
critical_num	Creates a critical event when this number of users are seen.

Table 26.2. IRC Basic Data Source Options

## 26.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zenccommand</b>

Table 26.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 27. Jabber Instant Messaging

## 27.1. About

ZenPacks.zenoss.JabberMonitor monitors the response time of devices running a Jabber server.

## 27.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.JabberMonitor

Table 27.1. Jabber Prerequisites

## 27.3. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Move the Jabber template from the Available list to the Selected list, and then click **Save**.

The Jabber template is added. The system can begin collecting Jabber server metrics from the device.

6. Select the newly added template and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Timeout (seconds)	Seconds before connection times out (default: 60)
Port	The port on which the Jabber server is listening. Typically this is port 5223.
Send String	string to send to the server : default <pre>&lt;stream:stream to='\${dev/id}' xmlns:stream='http://etherx.jabber.org/streams'&gt;</pre>
Expect String	String to expect in server response. <pre>&lt;stream&gt;</pre>

Table 27.2. Jabber Data Source Options

## 27.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 27.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 28. Java 2 Platform Standard Edition

## 28.1. About

ZenJMX is a ZenPack that allows Resource Manager to communicate with remote Java Management Extensions (JMX) agents. The ZenJMX ZenPack defines a data source named `JMX` that allows you to query any single or complex-value attribute, or invoke an MBean operation. It also comes with a built-in template named `Java` that contains MBean information for a few beans built into the JVM.

### Note

ZenJMX also includes a built-in template named `zenJMX`. This template should be used only on devices running Java applications that make information available through JMX. To monitor other Java applications, use the included Java template.

When the `zenjmx` daemon is started it communicates with ZenHub and retrieves a list of devices that possess `JMX` data sources. It also spawns a Java process. ZenJMX asynchronously issues queries for each of those devices to the Java process via XML-RPC. The Java process then collects the data from the Java application to be monitored, and returns the results to ZenJMX. Any collection or configuration errors are sent as events to Resource Manager and will appear in the event console.

Lastly, ZenJMX heartbeats after each collect to ZenHub to let Resource Manager know that ZenJMX is still alive and well.

### 28.1.1. JMX Background

The JMX technology is used throughout the Java Virtual Machine to provide performance and management information to clients. Using a combination of **JConsole** (Oracle's JMX client that is shipped with the JDK) and JMX, a system operator can examine the number of threads that are active in the JVM or change the log level. There are numerous other performance metrics that can be gleaned from the JVM, as well as several management interfaces that can be invoked that change the behavior of the JVM.

In Java 5, Oracle introduced the Remote API for Java Management Extensions. This enhancement defines an RMI wrapper around a JMX agent and allows for independent client development. ZenJMX accesses remote JMX agents via the Remote API for Java Management Extensions. It currently does not support local connections (provided via the temporary directory) to JMX Agents. JMX also specifies the manner in which various protocols can be used to connect to clients, and send and receive information. The original, most commonly used protocol is RMI. ZenJMX supports RMI and JMXMP connections.

### 28.1.2. ZenJMX Capabilities

ZenJMX is a full-featured JMX client that works "out of the box" with JMX agents that have their remote APIs enabled. It supports authenticated and unauthenticated connections, and it can retrieve single-value attributes, complex-value attributes, and the results of invoking an operation. Operations with parameters are also supported so long as the parameters are primitive types (Strings, booleans, numbers), as well as the object version of primitives (such as `java.lang.Integer` and `java.lang.Float`). Multi-value responses from operations (Maps and Lists) are supported, as are primitive responses from operations.

The `JMX` data source installed by ZenJMX allows you to define the connection, authentication, and retrieval information you want to use to retrieve performance information. The IP address is extracted from the parent device, but the port number of the JMX Agent is configurable in each data source. This allows you to operate multiple JMX Agents on a single device and retrieve performance information for each agent separately. This is commonly used on production servers that run multiple applications.

Authentication information is also associated with each JMX data source. This offers the most flexibility for site administrators because they can run some JMX agents in an open, unauthenticated fashion and others in a hardened and authenticated fashion. SSL-wrapped connections are supported by the underlying JMX Remote subsystem built into the JDK, but were not tested in the Zenoss labs. As a result, your success with SSL encrypted access to JMX Agents may vary.

The data source allows you to define the type of performance information you want to achieve: single-value attribute, complex-value attribute, or operation invocation. To specify the type of retrieval, you must specify an attribute name (and one or more data points) or provide operation information.

Any numerical value returned by a JMX agent can be retrieved by Resource Manager and graphed and checked against thresholds. Non-numerical values (Strings and complex types) cannot be retrieved and stored by Resource Manager.

When setting up data points, make sure you understand the semantics of the attribute name and choose the correct Resource Manager data point type. Many JMX Agent implementations use inconsistent nomenclature when describing attributes. In some cases the term "Count" refers to an ever-increasing number (a "Counter" data point type). In other cases the term "Count" refers to a snapshot number (a "Gauge" data point type).

### 28.1.3. Allowable Parameter Types

The following primitive data types are allowed in JMX calls:

- `java.lang.Integer`
- `java.lang.Long`
- `java.lang.Double`
- `java.lang.Float`
- `java.lang.String`
- `java.lang.Boolean`
- `int`
- `long`
- `double`
- `float`
- `boolean`

### 28.1.4. Single Value Attribute Calls

This is the most basic usage scenario. If you are interested in retrieving a single value from an MBean in a JMX Agent, and the attribute returns simple numeric data, you fall into the "single value attribute" category. To define a single-value attribute call simply provide the fully qualified name of your MBean and then provide the name of the attribute in the Attribute Name field of the data source. Lastly, you must define a data point.

Some examples of this include the commonly referenced JDK Threading information:

- MBean Name: `java.lang:type=Threading`
- Attribute Name: `ThreadCount`
- Data Points:
  - `ThreadCount (type: gauge)`

Java uses lots of file descriptors during normal operation. The number of open file descriptors the JVM is working with can be measured using the following information:

- MBean Name: `java.lang:type=OperatingSystem`
- Attribute Name: `OpenFileDescriptorCount`

- Data Points:
  - OpenFileDescriptorCount (type: gauge)

There are several other single-value attributes that can be retrieved from the JDK. We recommend using **JConsole** to interactively navigate through the MBean hierarchy to determine which MBeans contain useful information to you. See Section 28.5, "Using **JConsole** to Query a JMX Agent" for additional information on how to inspect the MBeans deployed in an JMX Agent.

### 28.1.5. Complex-Value Attribute Calls

If your MBean attribute defines multiple sub-attributes (via CompositeData or Tabular) that you are interested in capturing, then you fall into the category of a "complex-value attribute" call. The JDK contains a few complex-value attributes you might be interested in capturing, including garbage collection statistics that were captured during the copy and mark-sweep compact collection cycles.

To extract data from a complex-value attribute, you must define one or more data points in the data source. The names of the data points are used as keys into the complex-value data structure returned from the MBean attribute. For JMX CompositeData attributes, the data point names are used as a key to map the results. For JMX TabularData, the data point names are used as indexes into the structure to map the result.

The JDK also provides heap memory information via a complex-value attribute. The amount of committed, used, and maximum heap memory can be viewed by setting up a complex-value attribute in Resource Manager with the following information:

- MBean Name: java.lang:type=Memory
- Attribute Name: HeapMemoryUsage
- Data Points:
  - committed (type: gauge)
  - used (type: gauge)
  - max (type: gauge)

### 28.1.6. Example Method Calls

Some management values need to be computed. These situations frequently arise when custom MBeans are deployed alongside an enterprise application. An MBean named "Accounting" might be deployed within an enterprise application that defines operations intended for operators or support staff. These operations might include methods such as "getBankBalance()" or "countTotalDeposits()".

ZenJMX has the ability to invoke operations, but there are some subtleties in how ZenJMX sends parameters to the JMX Agent and interprets the response.

#### 28.1.6.1. No parameters, single return value

In the most basic usage scenario no arguments are passed to the operation and a single value is returned. This usage scenario is very similar to a single-value attribute call, except we're invoking an operation to retrieve the value rather than accessing an attribute. The configuration for this hypothetical usage scenario follows:

- MBean Name: Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting
- Operation Name: getBankBalance()
- Data Points:
  - balance (type: gauge)

#### 28.1.6.2. No parameters, multiple values returned in List format

In this scenario no parameters are passed to an operation, but multiple response values are provided in a List. The values returned are expressed in a List<Object>, but they are coerced (but not casted) to doubles prior to

being stored in Resource Manager. This means that returning a numeric value as "1234" will work, but "1,234" will not work. The litmus test is to evaluate if `Double.valueOf(object.toString())` will successfully evaluate.

ZenJMX can be configured to read multiple values from an operation's results by defining multiple data points. You must define a data point for each value returned from the operation, and if there is a mismatch between the number of data points you define and the size of the `List<Object>` returned an exception will be generated. The configuration for ZenJMX follows:

- MBean Name: `Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting`
- Operation Name: `getBalanceSummary()`
- Data Points:
  - `dailyBalance` (type: gauge)
  - `annualBalance` (type: gauge)

### **28.1.6.3. No parameters, multiple values returned in Map format**

In this scenario no parameters are passed to an operation, but multiple response values are provided in a `Map<String, Object>`. The keyset of the Map contains the names of data points that can be defined, and the values are the values of said data points. When a `Map<String, Object>` is returned you need not capture all of the returned values as data points, and you can instead pick the exact values you are interested in. To choose the values to capture you simply define data points with the same names as Strings in the keyset.

The following configuration demonstrates how to extract specific data points from an operation that returns a `Map<String, Object>`. The key item to note in this configuration is that "dailyBalance" and "annualBalance" must be present as keys in the returned `Map<String, Object>` and their values must be coercible via the `Double.valueOf(object.toString())` idiom.

- MBean Name: `Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting`
- Operation Name: `getBalances()`
- Data Points:
  - `dailyBalance` (type: gauge)
  - `annualBalance` (type: gauge)

### **28.1.6.4. Single parameter in polymorphic operation**

MBeans are implemented as Java classes and Java permits parameterized polymorphic behavior. This means that multiple methods can be defined with the same name so long as their parameter signatures differ. You can safely define "getBalance(String)" and "getBalance()" and the two exist as separate methods.

In order to properly resolve methods with the same name the caller must provide a `Class[]` that lists the types of parameters that exist in the method's signature. This resolves the candidate methods to an individual method which can then be invoked by passing an `Object[]`.

ZenJMX allows you to resolve methods of the same name and asks you to provide the fully qualified class names of each parameter in comma delimited format when you set up the data source. Note that primitive types (String, Boolean, Integer, Float) are supported but complex types are not supported, and that you must include the class' package name when providing the information (java.lang.String).

The `Object[]` of parameter values must line up with `Class[]` of parameter types, and if there is a mismatch in the number of types and values that are provided an exception will be generated.

The marshaling of values from String to Boolean, Integer, and Float types is provided via the `.valueOf()` static method on each of those types. That is, if you define an attribute of type `java.lang.Integer` you must provide a String that can be successfully passed to `java.lang.Integer.fromValue()`. If you fail to do so an exception is generated.

This example illustrates how to pass a single parameter to a polymorphic operation:

- MBean Name: Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting
- Operation Name: getBalances()
- Parameter Types: java.lang.Integer
- Parameter Values: 1234
- Data Points:
  - balance (type: gauge)

Here is another example where we've changed the type of the parameter passed to the method to be a String. Semantically it represents a different type of Account in our example:

- MBean Name: Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting
- Operation Name: getBalances()
- Parameter Types: java.lang.String
- Parameter Values: sbb552349999
- Data Points:
  - balance (type: gauge)

### 28.1.6.5. Multiple parameters in polymorphic operations

The above example describes how polymorphic behavior in Java functions and how method resolution can be provided by identifying the Class[] that represents the parameters passed to a method. The situation where multiple parameters are passed to a polymorphic operation is no different then the situation where a single parameter is passed to a polymorphic operation, except that the length of the Class[] and Object[] is greater than one.

When multiple parameters are required to invoke an operation you must provide the fully qualified class names of each parameter's type in comma delimited format, as well as the object values for each type (also in comma delimited format).

The following example demonstrates a configuration that passes two parameters to an MBean operation. The second parameter passed is a default value to return if no account can be located matching the first parameter.

- MBean Name: Application:Name=Accounting,Type=Accounting
- Operation Name: getBalances()
- Parameter Types: java.lang.String, java.lang.Integer
- Parameter Values: sbb552349999, 0
- Data Points:
  - balance (type: gauge)

There are additional combinations that are possible with polymorphic methods and the values they return, and those combinations are left as an exercise for the reader to explore. The logic for extracting results from multi-value operation invocations follows the same rules as the logic for extracting results from a multi-value attribute read. For additional information on the rules of that logic see the section above on multi-value attributes.

### 28.1.7. Special Service URLs

By default, URLs are assembled as:

```
service:jmx:rmi:///jndi/rmi://hostName:portNum/jmxrmi
```

This host name and port points to a registry. After a JMX agent connects to the registry, the registry tells the agent which host and port to use for remote calls.

In some situations, you may want to explicitly provide the registry host and port, as well as the host and port for the remote calls. Use the long form, as in:

```
service:jmx:rmi://127.0.0.1:8999/jndi/rmi://127.0.0.1:8999/jmxrmi
```

## 28.2. Prerequisites

Oracle JRE Version 5.0 or higher is required.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenJMX

Table 28.1. J2EE Prerequisites

### 28.2.1. Oracle Java Runtime Environment (JRE)

ZenJMX requires Oracle JRE Version 5.0 or higher. Make sure that after you install the JRE you update your PATH such that the **java** executable works. You can test this using the command:

```
$ which java
/usr/java/default/bin/java
```

If the above returns a fully qualified path, then you have successfully installed Java.

If Java is not installed, the **which** will return a message similar to the following:

```
$ which java
/usr/bin/which: no java in (/usr/local/bin:/bin:/usr/bin:/opt/zenoss/bin)
```

To determine which version of Java is installed, run the following command:

```
$ java -version
java version "1.5.0_16"
Java(TM) 2 Runtime Environment, Standard Edition (build 1.5.0_16-b06-284)
Java HotSpot(TM) Client VM (build 1.5.0_16-133, mixed mode, sharing)
```

#### Warning

Oracle's Java Version 5 (1.5) **must** be installed. The GNU Java does not work.

## 28.3. Example to Monitor a JMX Value

### 28.3.1. Enabling Remote JMX Access

Each application server has a slightly different process for enabling remote JMX Access. You should consult with your application server for specific instructions. This section includes instructions for a few commonly used configurations.

JMX agents can be configured in two ways: remote access and local-only. When configured for remote access a JMX client communicates with the JMX agent via a socket and uses a remote protocol such as Remote Method Invocation (RMI) or JMXMP to access the MBeans. When configured for local-only access the JMX agent periodically dumps serialized MBeans to a temporary directory on the machine. **JConsole** can be used to access JMX agents in local-only mode as well as in remote mode. ZenJMX can be used only with remote servers via RMI or JMXMP and cannot work with local-only serialized MBeans. This is not a significant limitation because ZenJMX can establish RMI connections to localhost in the same manner that it creates connections to remote hosts.

The `JAVA_OPTS` environment variable can be used to enable remote access to JVM MBeans. Set it as follows:

```
JAVA_OPTS="-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=12345
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=false"
```



```
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false"
export JAVA_OPTS
```

When starting an application pass the `JAVA_OPTS` variable as an argument to the JVM as follows:

```
java ${JAVA_OPTS} -classpath /path/to/application.jar com.yourcompany.Main
```

You can then use **JConsole** to connect to localhost:12345. Authentication can be configured by modifying the `java.security` file as well as `java.policy`. There are lots of examples available on the Internet that can provide guidance in how to achieve authenticated remote access to JVM MBeans.

### 28.3.2. Configure Resource Manager with a Custom Data Source

Custom JMX data sources allow system administrators to monitor any attribute or operation result accessible via a JMX call. ZenJMX creates a JMX data source and allows you to provide object information, as well as authentication settings, and attribute/operation information. Determining which object and attribute names, as well as which operations to invoke, is the key to customizing ZenJMX.

To configure the system with a custom data source:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device in the device list.

The device overview page appears.


3. Expand Monitoring Templates in the left panel, and then select Device.
4. Select Add Local Template from the Action menu.

The Add Local Template dialog appears.

5. Enter a name for the template (such as JVM Values), and then click **Submit**.

The template is added.

6. Select the newly created template.

7. Click  (Add) in the Data Sources area.

The Add Data Source dialog appears.

8. Enter a name for the data source (Heap Memory), select JMX as the type, and then click Submit.

The data source is added.

9. Double-click the data source to edit it. Change options as needed, and then click **Save**.

Option	Description
Protocol	RMI or JMXMP. Consult your Java application documentation to determine which JMX Connector protocols it supports.
JMX Management Port	This is not necessarily the same as the listen port for your server.
Object Name	The Object Name is also referred to as the MBean name. Enter <code>java.lang:type=Memory</code>
Attribute Name	Enter <code>HeapMemoryUsage</code>

Table 28.2. Memory Head Example ZenJMX Data Source Options

10. Add data points named `committed`, `max`, and `used`:

- a. Select Add Data Point from the Action menu.

The Add Data Point dialog appears.

b. Enter the name of the data point (`committed`, `max`, or `used`) and then click **Submit**.

11. After adding all data points, add graphs that reference them.

Review Section 28.5, “Using **JConsole** to Query a JMX Agent” to learn how to determine the object name, attribute name, and data points that might be interesting in your application.

## 28.4. Monitor Values in `TabularData` and `CompositeData` Objects

The Attribute Path input value on the ZenJMX data source allows you to monitor values nested in the `TabularData` and `CompositeData` complex open data objects. Using this value you can specify a path to traverse and index into these complex data structures.

If the result of traversing and extracting a value out of the nested open data is a single numeric value then it is automatically mapped to the datapoint in the data source. However, if the value from the open data is another open data object then the data point names from the datasource are used as indexes or keys to map values out of the open data.

The input value is a dot-separated string that represents a path through the object. Non-bracketed values are keys into `CompositeData`. Bracketed values are indexes into `TabularData`.

For `TabularData` indexes with more than one value, use a comma-separated list with no spaces (for example, `[key1,key2]`).

To specify a column name (needed only when the table has more than two columns) use curly brackets after the table index.

### Example

To get the used Tenured Generation memory after the last garbage collection from the Garbage Collector MBean, set the Attribute Name on the datasource to `lastGcInfo`. Set the Attribute Path to:

```
memoryUsageAfterGc.[Tenured Gen].{value}.used
```

The key `memoryUsageAfterGc` is evaluated against the `CompositeData` returned from the `lastGcInfo` attribute. The evaluation results in a `TabularData` object. Then, the `[Tenured Gen]` index is evaluated against the `TableData`, which returns a row in the table.

Since a row in the table can contain multiple columns, the key `value` (in curly brackets) is used to pick a column in the row. Lastly, the key `used` is evaluated against the `CompositeData` in the column to return the memory value.

In this example, since the index being used for the tabular data is not a multi-value index and so the column name is optional. The Attribute Path can be written as:

```
memoryUsageAfterGc.[Tenured Gen].used
```

## 28.5. Using **JConsole** to Query a JMX Agent

**JConsole** is a tool built into the JDK that allows system administrators to query a JMX Agent and examine the MBeans deployed within the server. **JConsole** also allows administrators to view JVM summary information, including the amount of time the JVM has been running, how many threads are active, how much memory is currently used by the heap, how many classes are currently loaded, and how much physical memory exists on the machine.

**JConsole** also provides a graph that shows memory, thread, and class usage over time. The scale of the graph can be adjusted so that a system administrator can examine a specific period of time, or can zoom out to view a longer range picture of usage. Unfortunately, **JConsole** can only produce graphs that show usage while **JConsole** was running. Administrators cannot look back in time to a point where the JVM was running but **JConsole** was not monitoring the JVM.

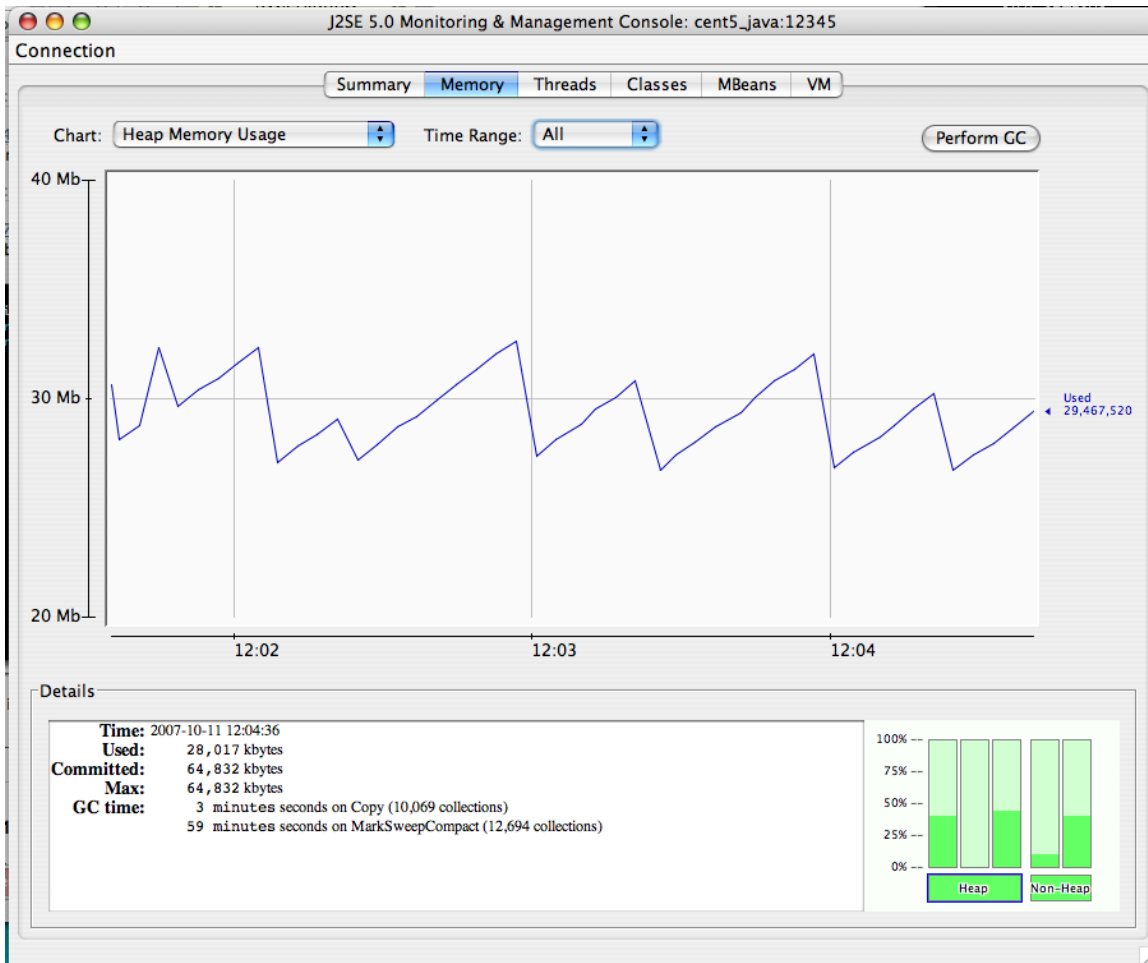


Figure 28.1. JMX Heap Graph

The MBeans tab along the top of **JConsole** provides an interactive method for examining MBean values. After clicking on the MBeans tab a panel will be displayed with a tree on the left hand side. The tree contains a hierarchical list of all MBeans deployed in the JVM.

The standard JVM MBeans are all in the `java.lang` and `java.util.logging` packages. Application server specific MBeans do not follow any standard naming pattern. Some vendors choose to use package names for their MBean names while other vendors choose package-like names (but not fully qualified packages).

To get started expand the `java.lang` node in the Tree. This will expose several MBeans as well as additional folders. Click on the Memory MBean and observe how the right hand side of the panel is populated with information about the Memory MBean.

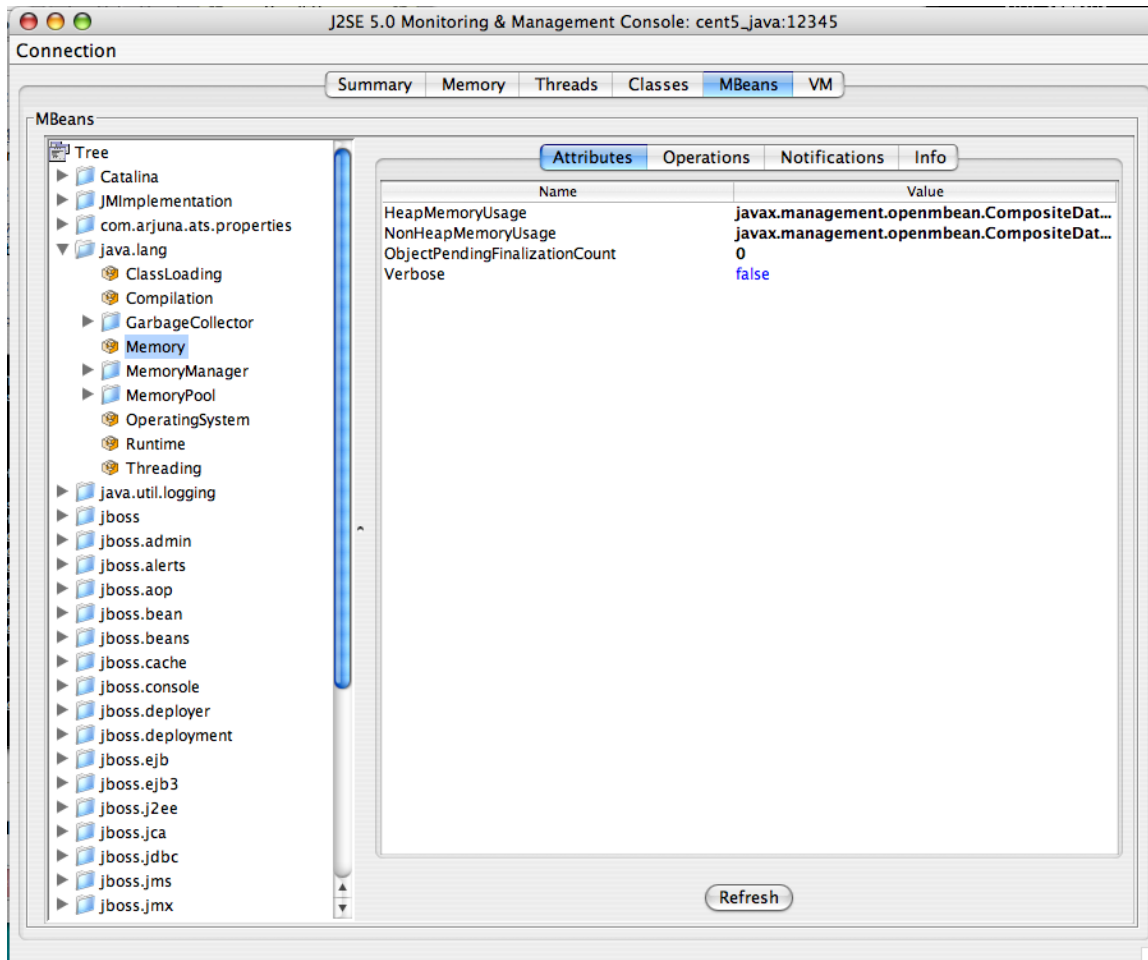


Figure 28.2. Memory MBean

MBeans can contain attributes and operations. MBeans can also fire notifications to observers, but that's beyond the scope of this document. The attributes tab lists all of the attributes in the first column and their values (or a clickable attribute type) in the second column. In the case of Memory the HeapMemoryUsage is a Composite attribute, otherwise referred to as a "complex-value attribute" in Resource Manager. Double click the "javax.management.openmbean.CompositeDataSupport" type and you will see multiple attributes appear. They show the amount of committed, maximum, and used memory sizes for the heap.

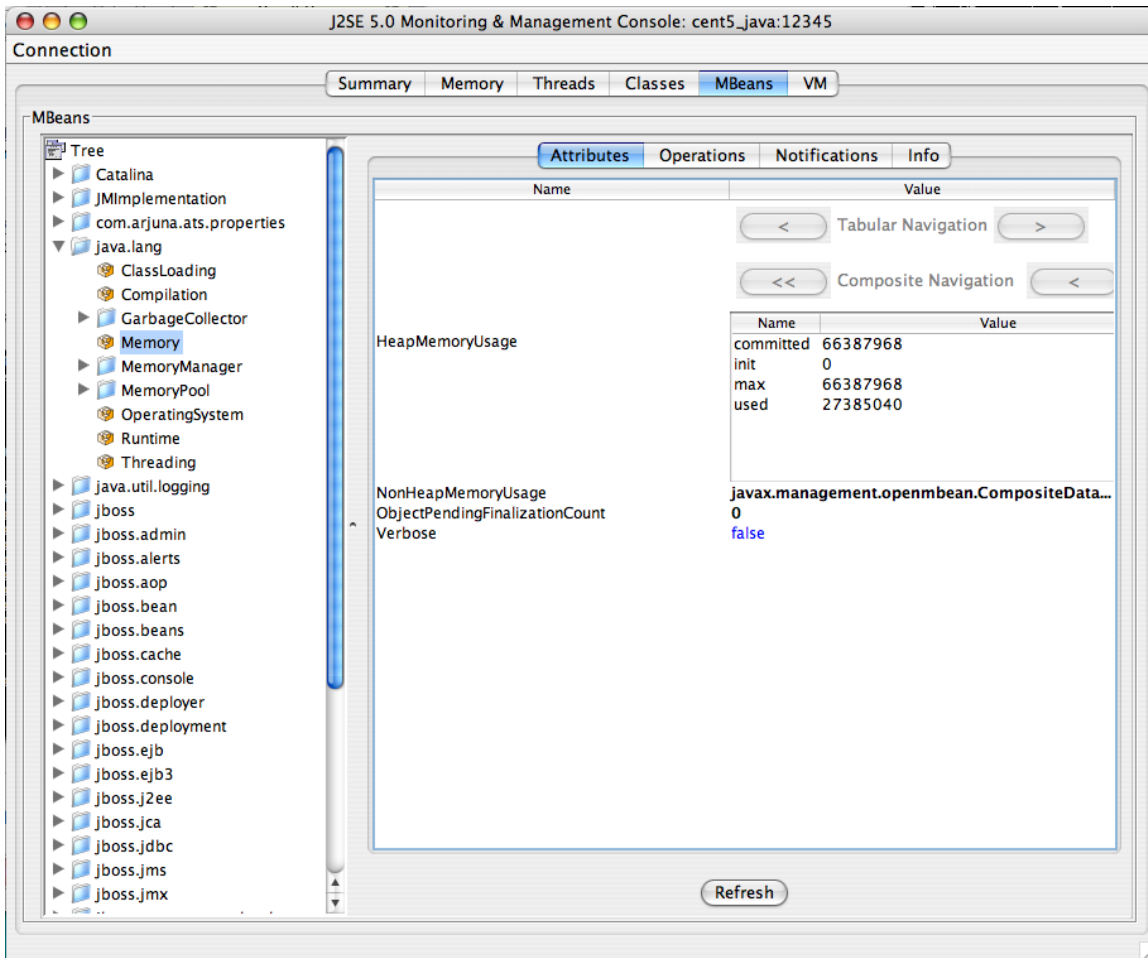


Figure 28.3. Memory MBean Expanded

The unique name of the MBean can be viewed by clicking on the Info tab. The first value is MBean Name. Its value in the case of Memory is: "java.lang:type=Memory."

**Note**

There is no standardized way to name MBeans; application server vendors name them differently.

You can also examine operation information by clicking on the Operations tab. These are methods that **JConsole** can remotely invoke on an MBean that will result in some value being computed or some state changing in the application. The Threading MBean has several operations that can be invoked that return information. Click on the java.lang package and then click on the Threading operation. Lastly, click on the Operations tab. Methods like "getThreadUserTime" are invocable.

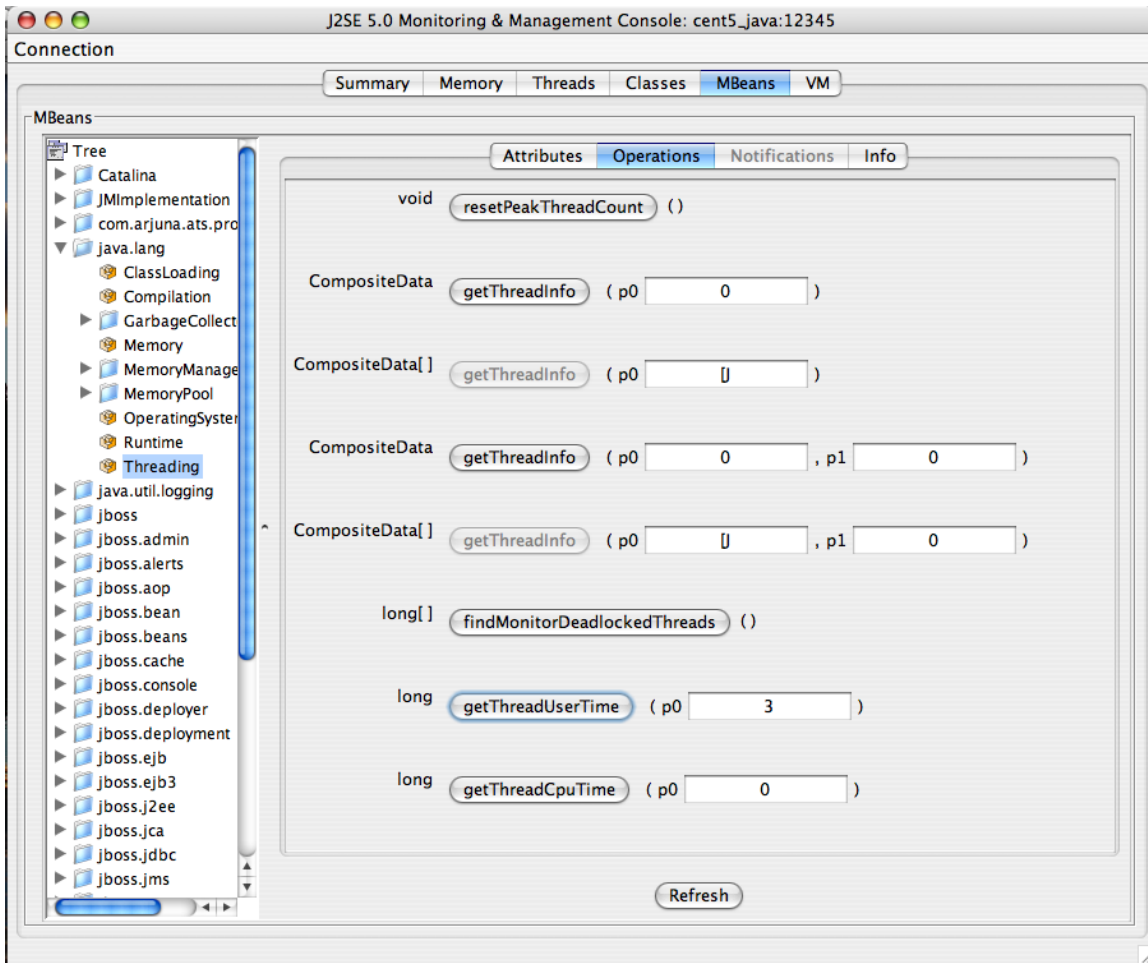


Figure 28.4. Operations Tab

Test the "getThreadUserTime" method by changing the p0 parameter to 1 and clicking the "getThreadUserTime" button. A dialog window will be raised that displays the amount of CPU user time thread #1 has used. Try adjusting the parameter to different values to observe the different CPU times for the threads.

## 28.6. ZenJMX Options

Run the following command for ZenJMX options:

```
zenjmx help
```

## 28.7. Memory Allocation

Use the --javaheap option to set the max heap. By default, the memory allocated is 512MB.

## 28.8. ZenJMX Logging

You can adjust logging levels to reduce the size of ZenJMX log files. In the log4j.properties file (in \$ZEN-HOME/Products/ZenJMX), update the first line and change DEBUG to INFO, WARN, or ERROR.

## 28.9. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenjmx

Table 28.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 29. JBoss Application Server

## 29.1. About

the JBossMonitor ZenPack that system administrators to monitor JBoss Application Servers. JBossMonitor uses the JMX Remote API and accesses MBeans deployed within JBoss that contain performance information about the components that are being managed.

The collected performance information includes: pool sizes for data sources (JDBC), Enterprise Java Beans (EJBs), message queues (JMS), threads, servlets, JSPs, and classloaders. Cache information is also accessible, providing system administrators insight into the number of hits (or misses) their cache policy has produced.

The ZenPack also aggregates individual performance metrics into higher level concepts that provide a picture of the performance of the application. Cache hits and misses are combined on the same graph to provide an overall picture of cache performance. Likewise, queue metrics are combined to show the number of messages currently on the queue, being processed, and being placed on the queue. Queue subscribers and publishers are also graphed.

Each of the individual performance metrics can be trended and predicted, and thresholds can be explicitly defined. Both the predicted thresholds and explicit thresholds inform system administrators of potential future problems before they occur. Since so much of J2EE involves "managed resources", the ability to monitor pool sizes and alert administrators prior to resources being exhausted is extremely valuable and can reduce the likelihood of a fatal outage caused by resource depletion.

Most of the metrics that are collected in JBossMonitor represent combinations of individual component metrics. For example, the Thread Pool metric represents all threads in all pools. It is possible to configure JBossMonitor to perform at higher granularity and have it monitor a Thread Pool with a particular name. However, since these names are application specific we have chosen to configure JBossMonitor to collect at a rather coarse-grained level by default. The installer is highly encouraged to customize and configure!

One particular monitoring template that requires end-user configuration involves Servlets. If a site to be monitored is revenue generating, and credit card submissions from the website are handled via a back-end servlet, it may be critically important to monitor the resources made available by the JBoss container to the servlet container. If the number of free spaces in the servlet pool dwindles to zero it could prevent your application from making a sale.

The following are the collected metrics for JBoss servers:

- Active Threads
- JMS Message cache memory usage
- JMS Message hits/misses
- JMS Topic/Destination queue size
- Java heap memory usage
- JCA commit, rollback, and transaction count
- JCA Connection pool in-use connections and available connections
- JCA connections created/destroyed
- JCA total connections
- JGroups cluster messages sent/received
- JGroups cluster bytes sent/received
- MBean creation/removal count
- MBean messages processed count

## 29.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenJMX, ZenPacks.zenoss.JBossMonitor

Table 29.1. JBoss Prerequisites

## 29.3. Enable Monitoring

### 29.3.1. Configuring JBoss to Allow JMX Queries

JBoss uses the `JAVA_OPTS` approach for enabling remote access to MBeans. However, it requires some additional properties. To set up your `JAVA_OPTS` for use in JBoss see the following code segment:

```
JAVA_OPTS="-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=12345"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=false"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Djboss.platform.mbeanserver"
JAVA_OPTS="${JAVA_OPTS} -Djavax.management.builder.initial=org.jboss.system\
.server.jmx.MBeanServerBuilderImpl"
export JAVA_OPTS
```

When you start JBoss via the `run.sh` you must also pass the `"-b 0.0.0.0"` argument:

```
cd ${JBOSS_HOME}/bin
./run.sh -b 0.0.0.0
```

JMX actually uses two separate ports for MBean access: one is used for initial connection handling and authentication, and the other is used for RMI access. During the handshake between a JMX Client and the JMX Agent the agent tells the client the IP address and port number for the RMI registry. By default JBoss sets the IP address to 127.0.0.1. This works when the JMX client and the JMX agent reside on the same device, but it won't work in a distributed environment.

By passing the `"-b 0.0.0.0"` argument you instruct JBoss to bind to all available network ports, and this results in the JMX Agent's handshaking logic using a network reachable address when informing clients of the RMI registry hostname and port.

The `jmx-console` Web page in JBoss allows you to view the different MBeans that are available; however, this does not mean that these MBeans are available remotely. If **JConsole** can view MBeans, then so can the **zenjmx** daemon that gathers this information.

### 29.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All JBoss services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/JBoss` device class.

#### Note

The **zenjmx** daemon must be configured and running. See Section 28.2.1, "Oracle Java Runtime Environment (JRE)" for more information about configuring the **zenjmx** daemon with the Sun JRE tools.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.



- c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zJBossJmxManagementAuthenticate	This configuration property is deprecated.
zJBossJmxManagementPassword	JMX password
zJBossJmxManagementPort	The port number used to gather JMX information
zJBossJmxManagementUsername	JMX username for authentication

Table 29.2. JBoss Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the JBoss server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

**Tip**

The out-of-the-box JBoss data source configuration has been defined at the macro level, but can be configured to operate on a more granular basis. For example, the Servlet Reload Count applies to all servlets in all Web applications but it could be narrowed to be Servlet /submitOrder in Web application "production server."

## 29.4. Change the Amount of Data Collected and Graphed

1. Navigate to the device or device class under the /Devices/Server/JBoss device class in the interface.
2. In the left panel, select Monitoring Templates
3. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.
4. To add other templates and retain existing monitoring templates, hold down the control key while clicking on the original entries.

Name	Description
JBoss Core	Core information about any JBoss server, including memory usage, threads, and uptime.
JBoss JCA Connection Pool	
JBoss JGroups Channel	
JBoss JMS Cache	
JBoss JMS Destination	
JBoss JMS Topic	
JBoss Message Driven EJB	

Table 29.3. JBoss Templates

5. Click the OK button to save your changes.

## 29.5. Viewing Raw Data

See the Section 28.5, "Using JConsole to Query a JMX Agent" section for more information about how to investigate raw data returned from the application.

## 29.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenjmx

*Table 29.4. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 30. Juniper Devices

## 30.1. About

The JuniperMonitor ZenPack allows system administrators to monitor their Juniper devices.

## 30.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.JuniperMonitor

Table 30.1. Juniper Prerequisites

## 30.3. Enable Monitoring

### 30.3.1. Configuring Juniper Devices to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the Juniper device to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 30.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All Juniper devices must exist under the `/Devices/Network/Juniper` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmpCommunity	Consult with your network administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
zSnmpMonitorIgnore	Set to a value of <code>False</code> .
zSnmpPort	Set the SNMP port. The default port is 161.
zSnmpVer	Set the SNMP version. Set to a value of <code>v2c</code> .

Table 30.2. Juniper Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes. You will now be able to start collecting the Juniper device metrics from this device.
4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some place holders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 30.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

*Table 30.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 31. LDAP Authentication

## 31.1. About

The LDAPAuthenticator ZenPack allows Resource Manager to use your existing LDAP authentication infrastructure, such as Active Directory or OpenLDAP, to enable single sign-on to the Resource Manager interface. With this capability, you can use the user management tools with which you are familiar to enable your Windows users to use their Windows credentials to authenticate to the Resource Manager interface. This saves you from having to manually create user accounts and separately maintain passwords.

Among the benefits of using a service like LDAP to maintain user accounts and privileges are:

- Users do not have to remember another password. This decreases support and maintenance requirements.
- Centralized management of each user's privileges. This enables easier security auditing and SOX reporting.

Authentication logging is stored in the `$ZENHOME/log/event.log` file.

## 31.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.LDAPAuthenticator

Table 31.1. Prerequisites

### 31.2.1. LDAP Configuration Information

Before configuring LDAP authentication, you should gather the following information from your LDAP or Active Directory administrator:

- Host name or IP address of an Active Directory global catalog server (for Active Directory authentication)
- Host name or IP address of an LDAP server (for other LDAP server authentication)
- User's base distinguished name (DN)
- Manager DN
- Manager password
- Groups base DN
- Optionally, list of Active Directory groups to map to Resource Manager roles

## 31.3. Configuring LDAP Authentication

You can configure LDAP authentication at initial setup, or from the Settings area of the interface:

- While in the setup wizard, at Step 2: Specify or Discover Devices to Monitor, click **LDAP Setup** (located at the bottom right of the wizard panel).
- From the interface, select **Advanced > Settings**, and then select **LDAP** in the left panel.

The first panel (Add LDAP Servers) of the LDAP Configuration wizard appears.

Figure 31.1. LDAP Configuration Wizard (Add LDAP Servers)

1. Enter information and make selections in the LDAP Servers area:
  - **Host** - Enter the host name or IP address of an Active Directory global catalog server (for Active Directory authentication) or the host name or IP address of an LDAP server (for Other LDAP server types).
  - **Port** - Optionally, change the server port number. By default, the port number is 389.
  - **SSL** - Select if using SSL. When you select this option, the default port number adjusts to 636.
2. Optionally, click **Add Server** to add another LDAP server. To remove a server from the list, click **Remove**.
3. Enter information and make selections:
  - **Server Type** - Select a server type (Active Directory or Other LDAP).
  - **Manager DN** - Enter the distinguished name of a user in the domain administrators group. An example that follows the user's base DN is:
 

```
cn=admin,cn=users,dc=example,dc=com
```
  - **Manager Password** - Enter the password for the Manager DN.
4. Click **Validate** to ensure your setup is valid.
5. Click **Next**.

The second panel (Configure LDAP Plugin) of the LDAP Configuration wizard appears.

**New LDAP Configuration**

**2. Configure LDAP Plugin**

LDAP Configuration ID: test-win2008-ad.zenoss.lc

Login Name Attribute: Windows Login Name (sAMAccountName)

Users Base DN: dc=zenoss-testing,dc=zenoss,dc=loc  
Example: dc=Users,dc=example,dc=com

Groups Base DN: dc=zenoss-testing,dc=zenoss,dc=loc  
Example: dc=Groups,dc=example,dc=com

User Filter:   
Example: (cn=Organization.\*)

Default User Roles: ZenUser

PREVIOUS NEXT CANCEL

Figure 31.2. LDAP Configuration Wizard (Configure LDAP Plugin)

6. Enter information and make selections:

- **Login Name Attribute** - Select the LDAP record attribute used as the user name.

**Note**

You can edit the list of selections by adding attributes on the Mappings page of the LDAP configuration area (Advanced > Settings > LDAP).

- **Users Base DN** - Enter the user's base distinguished name. For example, if your domain is ad.zenoss.com, then your user's base DN might be:

```
dc=Users,dc=ad,dc=com
```

- **Groups Base DN** - Enter the DN for the branch of your LDAP database that contains group records. These group records are of the LDAP class "groupOfUniqueNames," and the entry CN attribute constitutes the group name.
- **User Filter** - Specify a free-form LDAP filter expression to be added to the default user search filter. The default user search filter and this additional search filter are combined as an AND expression. Records must satisfy both filters to be found using the various user searches. Any value specified in this field must follow correct LDAP search filter syntax.
- **Default User Roles** - Specify one or more roles (in a comma-delimited list) to be given to all users authenticated from your LDAP tree. Zope expects all users - anonymous as well as authenticated - to have the role Anonymous.

7. Click **Next**. The third panel (Map LDAP Groups to Local Groups) of the LDAP Configuration wizard appears.

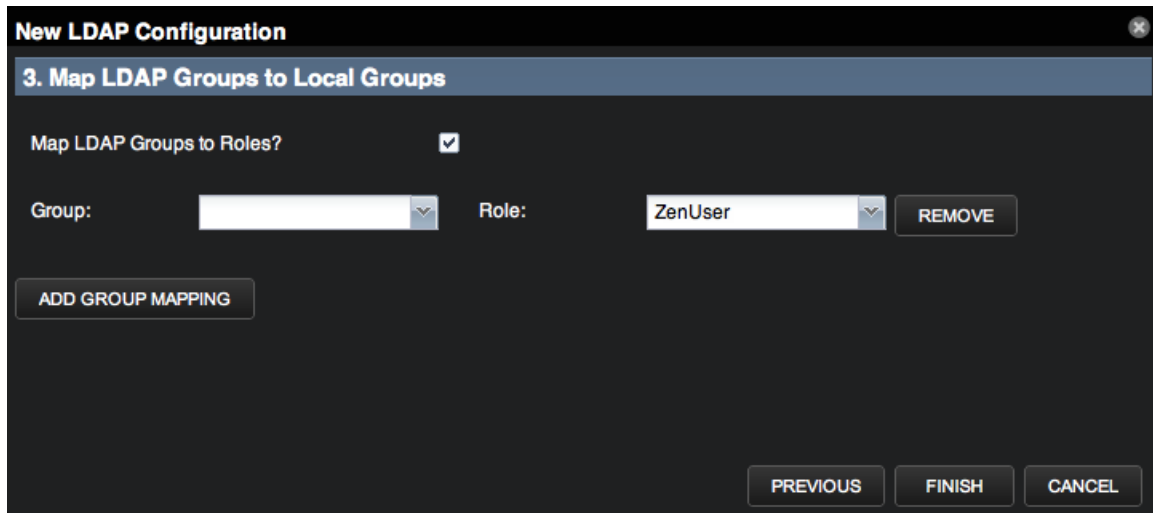


Figure 31.3. LDAP Configuration Wizard (Map LDAP Groups to Local Groups)

8. Enter information and make selections:

- **Map LDAP Groups to Roles** - Select this option if you want to control user roles within the Resource Manager Web interface by using Active Directory groups, instead of controlling the roles directly from within Resource Manager.

#### Note

If you choose to use this option, then you should add the following groups to LDAP:

- Resource Manager Managers
- Resource Manager Users
- **LDAP Group** - Select the LDAP group to map to a Resource Manager role.
- **Maps to Role** - Select the Resource Manager role to map the LDAP group.

9. Optionally, click **Add Group Mapping** to map another group. To remove a mapped group, click **Remove**.

10. Click **Finish** to complete LDAP configuration.

## 31.4. Advanced Tasks

Use the following information and procedures for troubleshooting and advanced tasks.

### 31.4.1. Verifying Connectivity and Credentials Outside of Resource Manager

You can verify that your credential information is valid from the Resource Manager server by using the **ldapsearch** command. To install this command, use the following for RPM-based systems:

```
# yum -y install openldap-clients
```

as the zenoss user on the Resource Manager server:

```
ldapsearch -LLL -x -b 'BaseDN' -D 'Bind DN' -W -H ldap://LDAP_server-name \
"sAMAccountName=*" member
```

### 31.4.2. Configuring Local Authentication as a Fallback

You can use local authentication as a fallback in the event that the LDAP server is unreachable. The local authentication plugin is called userManager.

1. Verify that the userManager plugin is available:



- a. Go to the following URL to access the Zope Management Interface (ZMI):

`http://YourZenossSystem:8080/zport/acl_users/manage`

- b. In the Name column, click **Plugins**.
- c. Click **Authentication Plugins**.
- d. Make sure that your LDAP plugin is first in the list of Active Plugins. (The userManager plugin must be below it.)

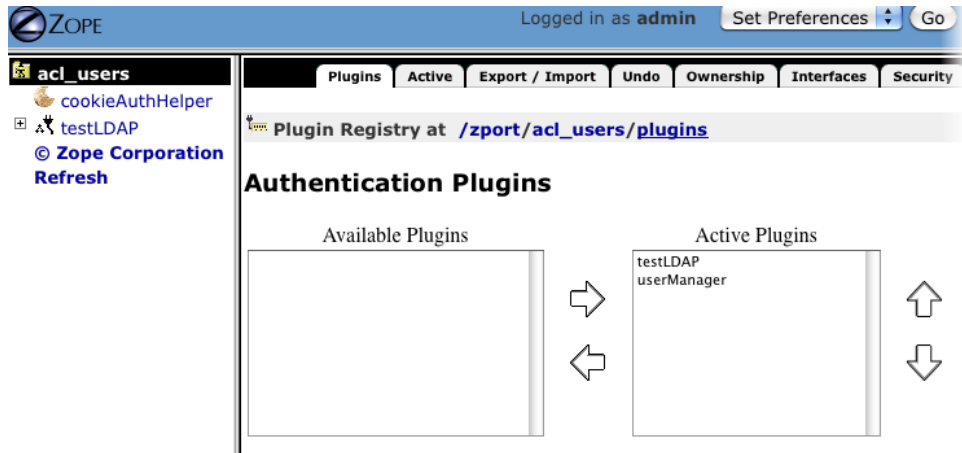


Figure 31.4. Authentication Plugins

2. Create a user with fallback capabilities. For example, to allow an LDAP user named "zenoss-user" to log in when the LDAP server is down:
  - a. Go to Advanced > Settings > Users > Add New User.
  - b. Create a user named "zenoss-user."

**Note**

You must create this account before the user logs in with the LDAP credentials. The password defined when creating the account in Resource Manager will be valid even when the LDAP server is down.

---

# Chapter 32. Lightweight Directory Access Protocol Response Time

## 32.1. About

The LDAPMonitor ZenPack monitors the response time of a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, in milliseconds.

## 32.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.LDAPMonitor

Table 32.1. LDAP Monitoring Prerequisites

## 32.3. Enable Monitoring

The LDAPServer template must be bound to the device class or device you want to monitor.

### 32.3.1. For a Device

To enable monitoring for a device:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Configuration Properties from the left panel.
4. Modify configuration property values as needed for your environment. Check with your LDAP administrator for more information.

Property	Description
zLDAPBaseDN	The Base Distinguished Name for your LDAP server. Typically this is the organization's domain name (for example, <code>dc=foobar,dc=com</code> )
zLDAPBindDN	The Distinguished Name to use for binding to the LDAP server, if authentication is required
zLDAPBindPassword	The password to use for binding to the LDAP server, if authentication is required

Table 32.2. LDAPServer Configuration Properties

5. Click **Save**.
6. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
7. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

8. Add the LDAPServer template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

The LDAPServer template is added to the list of monitoring templates.

9. Select the LDAPServer template and change options as needed.

Option	Description
Port	The port to connect to LDAP server (default 389)
Base Distinguished Name	Defaults to <code>\${here}/zLDAPBaseDN</code>
Bind Password	Defaults to <code>\${here}/zLDAPBindPassword</code>
Use SSL	Use SSL for the connection

Table 32.3. LDAPServer Basic Data Source Options

### Note

If your LDAP servers require SSL or a custom port, select the ldap data source, and then change the Use SSL and Port fields as needed.

10. Validate your configuration by running `zencommand`. Verify that the `check_ldap` or `check_ldaps` command correctly connects to your LDAP server:

```
zencommand run -v10 -d yourdevicenamehere
```

## 32.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 32.4. Daemons

---

# Chapter 33. Mail Transactions

## 33.1. About

The ZenMailTx ZenPack allows you to monitor round-trip email delivery.

### 33.1.1. Events

There are several situations for which ZenMailTx will create events. The component will be `zenmailtx`, the eventGroup will be `mail` and the eventClass will be `/Status`. These situations are:

- The SMTP server name or the POP server name cannot be resolved.
- The SMTP server or the POP server is down or unavailable.
- The timeout (specified on the Data Source tab) is exceeded for the SMTP or POP server.
- Authentication (if specified) with the SMTP or POP server fails.
- A threshold defined for one of the data points in this data source is exceeded. Thresholds are defined in the monitoring template that contains the data source.


Once an email has successfully made a trip back and forth, a clear event is created that clears any failure events.

## 33.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenMailTx

Table 33.1. Mail Transactions Prerequisites

## 33.3. Enable Monitoring

1. Click the device in the device list.
2. From the left panel, select the Device template under Monitoring Templates.
3. Select Add Local Template from the Action menu.
4. Enter an identifier for the template (such as ZenMailTx), and then click **Submit** to create the template.
5. Click the newly created ZenMailTx template.
6. In the Data Sources area, click  to add a data source.
7. Enter a name for the data source (MailTx), select MAILTX as the type, and then click **Submit**.
8. Change options as needed.

Option	Description
To Address	The recipient e-mail address. This should be the same as the POP Username.
From Address	The e-mail address that will appear in the From: field in the generated e-mail
SMTP Host	The e-mail server used by Zenoss to send the email
POP Host	The email server where you will retrieve your test message

Table 33.2. Mail Transactions Basic Data Source Options

**Tip**

Any of the `MAILTX` fields can take TAL expressions, including the password fields.

9. Click Save to save your changes.
10. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some place holders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs begin populating with information.

## 33.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenmailtx

Table 33.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 34. Active Directory

## 34.1. About

The ActiveDirectory ZenPack allows you to monitor Microsoft Active Directory authentication metrics.

This ZenPack creates a device class for Microsoft Active Directory with appropriate priorities. It also creates a Windows Service class and IP Service class for Active Directory-related services with monitoring enabled.

Use the Active Directory ZenPack to monitor these metrics:

- DS Client Binds/Sec
- DS Directory Reads/Sec, Searches/Sec and Writes/Sec
- DS Monitor List Size
- DS Name Cache Hit Rate
- DS Notify Queue Size
- DS Search Sub-operations/Sec
- DS Server Binds/Sec, Server Name Translations/Sec
- DS Threads In Use
- KDC AS Requests, TGS Requests
- Kerberos Authentications
- LDAP Active Threads
- LDAP Bind Time
- LDAP Client Sessions
- LDAP New / New SSL and Closed Connections/Sec
- LDAP Searches/Sec, Writes/Sec
- LDAP Successful Binds
- LDAP UDP Operations/Sec
- NTLM Authentications

## 34.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf, ZenPacks.zenoss.ActiveDirectory

Table 34.1. Active Directory Monitoring Prerequisites

## 34.3. Enable Monitoring

All Active Directory services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/Windows/Active Directory` device class. In addition, verify that your Resource Manager Windows service account has access to the Active Directory service.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.

- b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zWinUser	Windows user with privileges to gather performance information.
zWinPassword	Password for the above user.

Table 34.2. Active Directory Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the Active Directory server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 34.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwinperf

Table 34.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 35. MS Exchange

## 35.1. About

The MS Exchange ZenPack is an application monitoring ZenPack that monitors Microsoft Exchange and its related services. The ZenPack enables users to view graphs based on MS Exchange Performance Counters and to monitor processes related to MS Exchange.

## 35.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf ZenPacks.zenoss.MSExchange

Table 35.1. MS Exchange Prerequisites

## 35.3. Enable Monitoring

All MS Exchange services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/Windows/MSExchange` device class. In addition, verify that your Resource Manager Windows service account has access to the MS Exchange service.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zWinUser	Windows user with privileges to gather performance information.
zWinPassword	Password for the above user.

Table 35.2. MS Exchange Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the MS Exchange server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 35.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwinperf

Table 35.3. Daemons



---

# Chapter 36. Microsoft Message Queuing (MSMQ) Monitoring

## 36.1. About

The following description of Microsoft Message Queuing (MSMQ) can be found on Microsoft's MSMQ product page.

“Microsoft Message Queuing (MSMQ) technology enables applications running at different times to communicate across heterogeneous networks and systems that may be temporarily offline. MSMQ provides guaranteed message delivery, efficient routing, security, and priority-based messaging. It can be used to implement solutions for both asynchronous and synchronous messaging scenarios.”

The MSMQMonitor ZenPack described in this chapter allows Resource Manager to automatically discover queues and monitor how many messages are queued in each.

## 36.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.MSMQMonitor ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf

Table 36.1. MSMQ Monitoring Prerequisites

## 36.3. Configuration

To monitor the MSMQ queues you must first follow the instructions in the Windows Performance chapter of this guide to setup proper credentials for Resource Manager to remotely monitor your Windows server. Once this is done you can take one of the following two approaches to enabled MSMQ queue monitoring.

### 36.3.1. Automatically Monitor Queues on All Servers

The easiest way to configure Resource Manager to monitor your queues is to enable queue discovery for the entire /Server/Windows device class. Within 12 hours Resource Manager will have automatically discovered all of the queues available to be monitored and begun monitoring how many messages are in each queue and creating threshold events if they exceed 10,000 messages.

Perform the following steps to enable queue discovery for all Windows servers.

1. Navigate to the /Server/Windows device class.
2. Click **Details**.
3. Select Modeler Plugins from the left panel.
4. Click Add Fields.
5. Drag zenoss.wmi.MSMQQueueMap from the available fields to the list of plugins.
6. Click Save.
7. Wait about 12 hours for all Windows servers to be remodeled.

### 36.3.2. Monitor Queues on Specific Servers

If you do not want Resource Manager automatically monitoring queues on all of your Windows servers and would rather point it to specific servers you can do so by performing the following steps on each server you're interested in.

1. Navigate to the device.
2. Select Modeler Plugins from the left panel.
3. Click Add Fields.
4. Drag zenoss.wmi.MSMQQueueMap from the available fields to the list of plugins.
5. Click Save.
6. Select Model Device from the Action menu.

### 36.3.3. Fine-Tuning Queue Monitoring

By default Resource Manager will automatically monitor all queues on a server that is running the MSMQ services. Each queue will also have a default 10,000 maximum threshold applied to it. This means that an event will be created when the number of messages in a single queue exceeds 10,000.

**Note**

By default queues with names beginning with tcp will not be discovered. You can change this behavior with the `zMSMQIgnoreQueues` property. This property is a regular expression and any queues that match it will not be discovered.

You can change the maximum messages threshold on a per-queue basis by changing the `Queues Messages Threshold` property. Leaving this value blank will have the result of no threshold being applied.

## 36.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenwinperf</b>

*Table 36.2. MSMQ Monitoring Daemons*

---

# Chapter 37. Microsoft Internet Information Services

## 37.1. About

The IISMonitor ZenPack collects key metrics from Microsoft IIS. The metrics are collected using Windows Performance and does not require an agent to be installed on the IIS server.

- Connections Attempts
- Throughput (Bytes & Files)
- Requests (GET, HEAD, POST, CGI, ISAPI)
  - Standard: GET, HEAD, POST, CGI, ISAPI
  - WebDAV: PUT, COPY, MOVE, DELETE, OPTIONS, PROPFIND, PROPPATCH, MKCOL
  - Other: SEARCH, TRACE, LOCK, UNLOCK

## 37.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf ZenPacks.zenoss.IISMonitor

Table 37.1. MS IIS Prerequisites

## 37.3. Enable Monitoring

All IIS servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/Windows/WMI` device class. In addition, verify that your Resource Manager Windows service account has access to the IIS service.

1. Bind the IIS template to the `/Devices/Server/Windows/WMI` class. To do this:
  - a. Select the device class in the devices hierarchy.
  - b. Click **Details**.
  - c. Select `Device_WMI` under Monitoring Templates.
  - d. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

- e. Move IIS (`/Server/Windows/WMI`) from the Available area to the Selected area, and then click **Save**.
2. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
    - If applying changes to a device class:
      - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
      - b. Click **Details**.
      - c. Select Configuration Properties.
    - If applying changes to a device:
      - a. Click the device in the device list.
      - b. Select Configuration Properties.
  3. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zWinUser	Windows user with privileges to gather performance information.
zWinPassword	Password for the above user.

*Table 37.2. IIS Configuration Properties*

4. Click Save to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the IIS server metrics from this device.

5. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs begin to be populated with information.

## 37.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwinperf

*Table 37.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 38. Microsoft SQL Server

## 38.1. About

The MSSQLServer ZenPack monitors Microsoft SQL Server and its related services. The ZenPack enables users to view graphs based on Microsoft SQL Server Performance Counters and to monitor processes related to SQL Server.

## 38.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf, ZenPacks.zenoss.MSSQLServer

Table 38.1. MS SQL Server Prerequisites

## 38.3. Enable Monitoring

All MS SQL Server services must have a device entry under the `/Devices/Server/Windows/MSSQLServer` device class. In addition, verify that your Resource Manager Windows service account has access to the MS SQL Server service.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zWinUser	Windows user with privileges to gather performance information.
zWinPassword	Password for the above user.

Table 38.2. MS SQL Server Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

You will now be able to start collecting the MS SQL Server server metrics from this device.

4. Navigate to Graphs to see placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes, the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 38.4. Collecting Information from Non-Default Microsoft SQL Server Instances

The default Microsoft SQL Server instance is `SQLServer`. The monitoring template delivered with the MSSQLServer ZenPack uses this default instance to gather performance metrics. If you use a non-default SQL Server instance, then Resource Manager does not automatically find and gather information about it.

To enable Resource Manager to monitor a non-default instance, you must override the monitoring template:

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, click the device on which you want to override the template.
2. Under Monitoring Templates, select the MSSQLServer template.
3. From the Action menu, select Override Template Here.

The Override Templates dialog appears.

4. Select the MSSQLServer template in the list, and then click **Submit**.

The template redisplay in the left panel, now identified as "Locally Defined."

5. For each of the data sources in the Data Sources area, perform these steps:
  - a. Double-click the data source to edit it.
  - b. In the Perf Counter field, change the text "\SQLServer:" to "\MyInstance:" (where *MyInstance* is the name of the Microsoft SQL Server database instance name).
  - c. Click **Save**.
6. Remodel the device.

## 38.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwinperf

Table 38.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 39. Multi-Realm IP Networks

## 39.1. About

The Multi-Realm IP ZenPack functionality extends core modeling, monitoring, and event management in Resource Manager to allow for overlapping IP spaces. With this ZenPack, Resource Manager can prefix a realm identifier to the IP addresses on a given network to differentiate these addresses in Resource Manager.

There are two primary use cases for using multi-realm IP management.

- A large company that manages multiple locations that have the same network spaces defined across these multiple locations and as a result have created multiple overlapping IP spaces and Resource Manager needs a way to identify each separate IP space in the system.
- Service Providers responsible for monitoring multiple customers where the customers have created independent networks and IP spaces that are unique to their location, but not unique to the Service Provider.

The essential workflow for creating and using IP Realms is that first you need to create the IP realms and then associate these realms with a collector. The associations between IP Realms and actual devices is made automatically by the device's association with the collector. All devices on a collector are associated with the realm for that collector.

### Note

The Multi-Realm IP ZenPack is available only by separate download from the Zenoss Support site.

After downloading the ZenPack, you must install it manually. In the Resource Manager interface, go to Settings > Zenpacks > Install Zenpack.

## 39.2. Prerequisites

Before setting up multi-realms, you must delete all Resource Manager networks. (These are automatically recreated.)

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DistributedCollector, ZenPacks.zenoss.MultiRealmIP

Table 39.1. Multi-realm Prerequisites

## 39.3. Example System

The following diagram lays out an example setup. It has a central Resource Manager server in the 10.10.10.0/24 network. The network local to the server is considered the default network within the system. The default network is treated exactly the same as a Resource Manager system without Multi-Realm IP ZenPack installed.

There are two other networks shown ( $r_1$  and  $r_2$ ) which are behind a firewall and have the same IP space 192.168.0.0/24. Each realm has a distributed collector located within it. The collector can be accessed from the Resource Manager server using a IP translation from the firewall to map the address accessible from in front of the firewall to an address behind the firewall. Remote collectors in a multi-realm setup must be accessible from the central server using SSH.

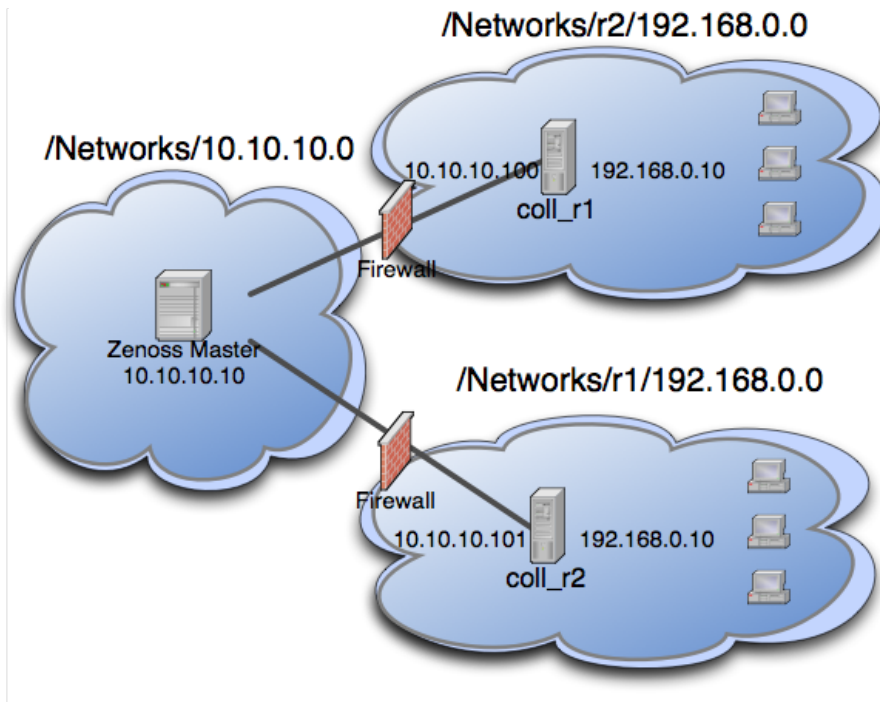


Figure 39.1. Example IP Realm

## 39.4. System Setup

Set up Resource Manager following the example system described above.

### Tip

If you do not have overlapping IP space this example can be created using collectors within the same network. To create the example, add a machine multiple times once per collector, making sure to change the name of the device as it is added. The result is similar to a real realm setup.

Under multi-realm IP networks, device names *must* be unique even though the IP addresses will overlap.

On certain server configurations, if a distributed collector is configured, a "zenpack command failed" error occurs when installing this ZenPack. If you encounter this error, then run the following grant (as MySQL root):

```
grant super on *.* to 'zenoss'@'{FQDN_of_Zenoss_host}' identified by 'zenoss';
```

where the first 'zenoss' is the user account that Resource Manager uses to access MySQL, and the second 'zenoss' is that account's password.

### 39.4.1. Adding Realms

1. Go to Infrastructure > Networks.
2. From the Add menu, select Add IP Realm. Add the realms `r1` and `r2`.

### 39.4.2. Adding Collectors to Realms

1. Add the two collectors that are installed in each realm.

Distributed collectors now have an IP Realm field on their configuration screen set each collector to the appropriate realm configured above.

2. Change each collector so that it is in the correct realm.



### 39.4.3. Adding Devices to Realms

1. Now we are ready to add devices to the system. As mentioned above, adding the same device to the system twice can simulate a multi-realm setup. Add a device called `A.test` making sure that when it is added the collector is set to one of the remote collectors, and not `localhost`.
2. Now rename the device.
3. Add the device a second time using your other collector, again not `localhost`.
4. After the device is loaded, select Software and follow the network link on one of the interfaces. Notice that the network has been created underneath the realm created earlier. This configuration is at the heart of multi-realm, as networks are discovered they are created within each realm.

Monitoring is now happening on each representation of the device from the different collectors in different overlapping realms.

As another test try searching by IP from the top-level search. Two devices will be returned -- one within each realm.

### 39.5. Notes

- If an event contains the unique name of a device then it is straight-forward to assign it to the proper device. If only the IP address is sent the event will be assigned by looking up the IP within the context of the realm.
- If a device is moved between realms it must be remodeled so that its IPs are placed in the proper location.
- The Network Map only supports the display the default realm.

---

# Chapter 40. MySQL Database

## 40.1. About

MySqlMonitor provides a method for pulling performance metrics from the MySQL database server directly into Resource Manager without requiring the use of an agent. This is accomplished by using the MySQL client library to connect to the database remotely.

The following metrics are collected and graphed for MySQL server:

- Command Statistics (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE)
- Select Statistics (Scan, Range Check, Range Join, Full Join)
- Handler Statistics (Keyed and Unkeyed Reads, Writes, Updates, Deletes)
- Network Traffic (Received and Sent)

## 40.2. Prerequisites

Each remote collector must have an installed MySQL client.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.MySqlMonitor

Table 40.1. MySQL Prerequisites

## 40.3. Enable Monitoring

Use the following procedures to enable monitoring.

### 40.3.1. Authorize MySQL Performance Data Access

Follow these steps to set up your MySQL server to allow Resource Manager to read performance data from the system tables.

1. Connect to the MySQL database by using the MySQL client:

```
mysql -u root
```

Alternatively, if there is a MySQL root password:

```
mysql -u root -p
```

2. Create a user for Resource Manager to use.

```
mysql> CREATE USER Name IDENTIFIED BY 'Resource ManagerPassword' ;
```

```
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
```

### 40.3.2. Set up Resource Manager

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Configuration Properties from the left panel.
4. Edit the zMySQLRootPassword configuration property for the device or devices in Resource Manager on which you want to monitor MySQL.

5. Click **Save**.
6. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
7. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

8. Add the MySQL template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

The MySQL template is added to the list of monitoring templates.

### Note

Pay particular attention to the MySQL Version 5+ setting in the data source. If you are monitoring pre-v5 installations of MySQL, then you must set this value to False. If you are monitoring pre-v5 and v5+ installations, then create two templates: one for MySQL installations earlier than v5 and another for those after.

## 40.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 40.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 41. NetApp Filers

## 41.1. About

NetAppMonitor provides additional modeling and monitoring for NetApp devices. NFS, CIFS and HTTP operations per second are collected, as well as file system and snapshot utilization information. Hardware model and operating system revision asset information is modeled.

The NetApp ZenPack uses reports (IIRC) provided by the StorageBase ZenPack.

Asset information:

- Hardware Model
- Operating System Revision

Device metrics:

- Network bits/sec: Send and Received
- Operations/sec: NFS, CIFS and HTTP

File system metrics:

- File system utilization (90% threshold)
- Snapshot utilization (120% threshold)

NetApp uses SSH to model NFS clients of file systems. It uses SNMP to model:

- Disks, storage enclosures, RAID groups, Plexes, Aggregates, Volumes, LUNs and QTrees
- LUN clients
- Licenses

### Note

Sizes reported by the NetAppMonitor ZenPack are approximate, as values for many objects (Aggregate, Volume, Plex, and RAID group) are not exposed by the NetApp MIB.

It uses SNMP to monitor:

- iSCSI, Fibre Channel, and per LUN throughput
- Disk inventory (active, spare, pre-failed, or failed)
- Disk maintenance activity (scrubbing, reconstructing, parity reconstructing, verifying parity)
- NFS v3 statistics
- NFS cache statistics
- CIFS statistics

### 41.1.1. Performance Graphs

Performance graphs provided with this ZenPack include:

- NFSv3 Operations
- Fibre Channel Traffic
- iSCSI Traffic
- NFS Caching Statistics
- Disk Inventory

- Disk Maintenance

## 41.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 3.x or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.NetAppMonitor ZenPacks.zenoss.StorageBase

Table 41.1. NetApp Prerequisites

## 41.3. Enable Monitoring

### 41.3.1. Configuring NetApp Devices to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the NetApp devices to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 41.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All NetApp devices must exist under the `/Devices/Storage/NetApp` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmpCommunity	Consult with your storage administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
zSnmpPort	The default port is 161.
zSnmpVer	Set to <code>v2c</code> .

Table 41.2. NetApp Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes. You will now be able to start collecting the NetApp metrics from this device.
4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 41.4. Using SSH to Model NFS Clients

To use SSH to model NFS clients, you must:

1. Allow SSH logins to the NetApp server.
2. Set the configuration properties `zCommandPassword` and `zCommandUser`.
3. Remodel the device.

## 41.5. Forwarding syslog Events from NetApp

To forward syslog events from NetApp:

1. From the NetApp interface, click the Filer menu.
2. Click the Configure Syslog menu item.
3. Click the New Action button.
4. Add the following, *separating each field with a tab*.

```
*.* @yourzenosserver
```

5. Click **OK**.

You can test the configuration by logging in to the command line on the NetApp server, and then entering the following command:

```
logger Hello World
```

This should result in an event with the subject "Hello World" appearing in the Resource Manager event console. To restart the daemon, enter:

```
syslog reset_syslog
```

## 41.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 41.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 42. NetScreen Devices

## 42.1. About

NetScreenMonitor allows you to monitor NetScreen devices.

## 42.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.NetScreenMonitor

Table 42.1. NetScreen Prerequisites

## 42.3. Enable Monitoring

### 42.3.1. Configuring NetScreen Devices to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the NetScreen device to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 42.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All NetScreen devices must exist under the `/Devices/Network/NetScreen` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmpCommunity	Consult with your network administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
zSnmpMonitorIgnore	This should be set to <code>False</code>
zSnmpPort	The default port is 161.
zSnmpVer	This should be set to <code>v2c</code>

Table 42.2. NetScreen Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes. You will now be able to start collecting the NetScreen device metrics from this device.
4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 42.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

Table 42.3. Daemons



---

# Chapter 43. Network News Transport Protocol (NNTP)

## 43.1. About

ZenPacks.zenoss.NNTPMonitor ZenPack monitors the response time of an NNTP server in milliseconds.

## 43.2. Enable Monitoring

To enable monitoring for a device:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the NNTPMonitor template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

The NNTPMonitor template is added to the list of monitoring templates.

6. Select the template and change options as needed.
7. Validate your configuration by running **zencommand** and observing that the **check\_nttp** or **check\_nntp** command correctly connects to your NNTP server:

```
zencommand run -v10 -d yourdevicenamehere
```

## 43.3. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 43.1. Daemons

---

# Chapter 44. Network Time Protocol

## 44.1. About

The NtpMonitor ZenPack monitors the offset between system time and a target Network Time Protocol (NTP) server's time.

## 44.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.NtpMonitor

Table 44.1. NTP Prerequisites

## 44.3. Enable Monitoring

The NTPMonitor template must be bound to the device class or device you want to monitor.

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the NTPMonitor template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

The NTPMonitor template is added to the list of monitoring templates. You can now start collecting the NTP server metrics from this device.

## 44.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 44.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 45. Nortel Devices

## 45.1. About

The NortelMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor Nortel devices.

## 45.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.NortelMonitor

Table 45.1. Nortel Prerequisites

## 45.3. Enable Monitoring

### 45.3.1. Configuring Nortel Devices to Allow SNMP Queries

Configure the Nortel device to allow SNMP queries from the Resource Manager server, and send SNMP v1 or SNMP v2 traps to the Resource Manager server.

### 45.3.2. Configuring Resource Manager

All Nortel devices must exist under the `/Devices/Network/Nortel` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSnmpCommunity	Consult with your network administrators to determine the SNMP community permitted.
zSnmpMonitorIgnore	This should be set to <code>False</code>
zSnmpPort	The default port is 161.
zSnmpVer	This should be set to <code>v2c</code>

Table 45.2. Nortel Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes. You will now be able to start collecting the Nortel device metrics from this device.
4. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 45.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenperfsnmp</b>

*Table 45.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 46. ONC-Style Remote Procedure Call (RPC)

## 46.1. About

ZenPacks.zenoss.RPCMonitor monitors the availability of an ONC RPC server.

## 46.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.RPCMonitor

Table 46.1. ONC RPC Prerequisites

## 46.3. Enable Monitoring

The RPCMonitor template must be bound to the device class or device you want to monitor. Follow these steps to enable monitoring:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Configuration Properties from the left panel.
4. Set the appropriate RPC command to test in the zRPCCommand configuration property (for example, nfs or ypserv).
5. Click **Save**.
6. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
7. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

8. Add the RPCServer template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

The RPCServer template is added to the lists of monitoring templates. You can now collect the RPCServer server metrics from the device.

## 46.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 46.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 47. Oracle

## 47.1. About

The Oracle Monitoring ZenPack (DatabaseMonitor) monitors an Oracle database server. The ZenPack enables users to view graphs based on interface from Oracle performance tables.

## 47.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.DatabaseMonitor

Table 47.1. Oracle Prerequisites

### Note

The Oracle ZenPack (ZenPacks.zenoss.DatabaseMonitor) is not available at the Enterprise Download site by default for legal reasons. It is also not included in the Enterprise ZenPacks RPM file.

Oracle requires each user to complete a license agreement prior to receiving this ZenPack. Upon completion, Zenoss Support will enable the ZenPack. You will be notified via a new case in the Zenoss Support Portal when the ZenPack is available. This ZenPack will be located in the `zenpacks` directory at the Enterprise Download site as both a 32-bit and a 64-bit version.

After downloading the ZenPack, you must install it manually. In the Resource Manager interface, go to Advanced > Settings, select ZenPacks in the left panel, and then select Install ZenPack from the Action menu.

## 47.3. Enable Monitoring

### 47.3.1. Authorize Oracle Performance Data Access

The default Oracle monitoring template queries the `v$statname` and `v$sysstat` views for performance metrics. You must get a login to the Oracle instance with read privileges to these tables at the minimum. You must also provide read privileges any other custom tables or views you plan to monitor.

### 47.3.2. Configure Resource Manager

Oracle monitoring can be applied to any device in the system by binding the Oracle template and configuring a few properties. The following steps illustrate how you would add Oracle monitoring to a Windows server called `oraprod1.example.com`.

#### Procedure

1. Select the `oraprod1.example.com` device in the device list.
2. In the left panel, select Configuration Properties.
3. Set the following Oracle-related properties.
  - `zOracleConnectionString`: Optionally used instead of the following separate options.
  - `zOracleInstance`: Oracle SID
  - `zOraclePassword`: Password for the Oracle account
  - `zOraclePort`: Port number for the Oracle instance
  - `zOracleUser`: Username for the Oracle account

4. Click Save.
5. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.
6. Move the Oracle template from the list of Available templates to the Selected area.
7. Click Save.

You will now be able to find the following additional graphs on the device. It may take up to fifteen minutes to start displaying values. You can check the device's event console for any errors related to the Oracle collection.

## 47.4. Monitor Additional SIDs

To monitor performance data from an additional SID on the same device you must make a copy of the default Oracle template and adjust its instance property.

In addition, to ensure proper graphing, the data source names must be unique.

*Example 47.1. Example Naming Structure*

Template	Data Source Name	Data Source Instance (SID)
Oracle.ORAPROD	sysstat.orafrod	ORAPROD
Oracle.ORATEST	sysstat.oratest	ORATEST

### Procedure

1. Navigate to Advanced > Monitoring Templates.
2. Highlight /Devices under the Oracle template.
3. Select Copy/Override Template from the action menu.
4. Select your Oracle server from the Target list.
5. Click Submit.
6. Highlight the new Oracle template for your Oracle server.
7. Select View and Edit Details from the action menu.
8. Change the template name from Oracle to `OracleSID` where *SID* is the data source instance.
9. Click Submit.
10. Highlight the Oracle template for your Oracle server.
11. Double-click the data source name.
12. Change the data source name from `sysstat` to `sysstatSID`.
13. Click **Submit**.

## 47.5. Monitoring Other Tables or Views

The Oracle data source also allows monitoring of other data contained within the database. You will need to build a query that returns a table in the following format.

Data Point Name	Numeric Value
firstValue	123
secondValue	45.6

*Table 47.2. Example Query Results*

Once you have a result set conforming to this name, value column specification you can add a new Oracle data source to a new or existing template using the following steps.

## Procedure

1. Optionally create a new monitoring template for the data source.
2. Edit the monitoring template.
3. Add a new Oracle data source to the template.
4. Fill out all of the data source fields as required to make the query.
5. Add one data point to the new data source for each row.

### Note

The data point name must match the value in the first column of the result set exactly. For the example result set shown above you would create a data point named `firstValue` and another named `secondValue`.

## 47.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zencommand

Table 47.3. Daemons



---

# Chapter 48. Predictive Thresholding

## 48.1. About

The ZenHoltWinters ZenPack adds the ability to create threshold events when a device exceeds cyclical predicted values. The Holt-Winters exponential smoothing algorithm is used for this prediction.

For more information on RRD and Holt-Winters, see the **rrdcreate** command for more information.

### Warning

Resource Manager relies on the existence of Holt-Winters RRAs within an RRD file. After adding Holt-Winters thresholds the RRD files will need to be re-created so that the new configuration can occur. You will have to remove any existing RRD files so that new files can be created.


Removing RRD files will remove all historical information associated with these RRD files.

## 48.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenHoltWinters

Table 48.1. Prerequisites

## 48.3. Add a Predictive Threshold

1. Navigate to the template that you want to modify.
2. From the Thresholds area, click  (Add Threshold).
3. Provide a name for the new threshold and select the `HoltWintersFailure` threshold type, and then click **Add**.
4. Choose the data source to which the threshold should be applied.
5. Specify the parameters for the prediction engine.

Name	Description
Rows	The number of points to use for predictive purposes.
Alpha	A number from 0 to 1 that controls how quickly the model adapts to unexpected values.
Beta	A number from 0 to 1 that controls how quickly the model adapts to changes in unexpected rates changes.
Season	The number of primary data points in a season. Note that Rows must be at least as large as Season.

Table 48.2. Predictive Threshold Data Source Threshold Options

6. Click Save to save your changes.
7. Remove the RRD file or files that correspond to the data source selected in a previous step.

```
cd $ZENHOME/perf/Devices
rm device_names/DataSource_DataPoint.rrd
```

### Note

Removing the RRD files does result in a loss of historical information.

---

# Chapter 49. RANCID Integration

## 49.1. About

The RANCIDIntegrator ZenPack allows integration between the popular RANCID configuration management tool and Resource Manager. The integration points between the tools are:

- Resource Manager will build the `router.db` file for RANCID. This allows for the centralization of administration activities and reduces the duplication of effort normally required to maintain the two tools.
- Implementation of this feature is as easy as adding a **cron** job to execute `$ZENHOME/bin/zenrancid` to update the `router.db` file.
- Resource Manager will automatically run RANCID's **rancid-runm** tool on a single device in response to a `ciscoConfigManEvent` SNMP trap being sent from the device to Resource Manager. Cisco devices will send this trap whenever their configuration is changed. This allows for real-time capturing of router configuration changes in your CVS repository.

### Note

The RANCID integrator is dependent on a connection to the Zope server, hence it can run only on the Resource Manager master and as such works only with managed resources on the master.

## 49.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.RANCIDIntegrator

Table 49.1. RANCID Prerequisites

## 49.3. Enable Integration

### 49.3.1. Configure Cisco Devices to Send Traps

To implement this feature you must configure your Cisco devices to send their SNMP traps to the Resource Manager server.

Link from Cisco device status pages to the most recent configuration stored in your CVS repository via `viewvc`.

### 49.3.2. Configure RANCID Update Information in Resource Manager

1. From Infrastructure >Devices, click the device in the device list.
2. Select Configuration Properties in the left panel.
3. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device.

Name	Description
<code>zRancidRoot</code>	File system directory where RANCID is installed. It may be NFS mounted from the RANCID server. Default is <code>/opt/rancid</code>
<code>zRancidUrl</code>	Base URL to <b>viewvc</b>
<code>zRancidGroup</code>	RANCID group attribute. Controls what <code>router.db</code> file the device is written to. Can be set at the device class or device level. Default is <code>router</code> on the <code>/Network/Router/Cisco</code> class

Name	Description
zRancidType	RANCID type attribute. Controls what device type is written to the <code>router.db</code> file. Can be set at the device class or device level. Default is <code>cisco</code> on the <code>/Network/Router/Cisco</code>

Table 49.2. RANCID Configuration Properties

4. Click Save to save your changes.

---

# Chapter 50. Solaris

## 50.1. About

The SolarisMonitor ZenPack enables Resource Manager to use Secure Shell (SSH) to monitor Solaris hosts. Resource Manager models and monitors devices placed in the `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class by running commands and parsing the output. Parsing of command output is performed on the Resource Manager server (if using a local collector) or on a distributed collector. The account used to monitor the device does not require root access or special privileges.

The SolarisMonitor ZenPack provides:

- File system and process monitoring
- Network interfaces and route modeling
- CPU utilization information
- Hardware information (memory, number of CPUs, and model numbers)
- OS information (OS-level, command-style information)
- Pkginfo information (such as installed software)
- LDOM monitoring

## 50.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.5 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.SolarisMonitor
Solaris releases supported	OpenSolaris 5.11, Solaris 9 and 10

Table 50.1. Solaris Prerequisites

### Note

If using a distributed collector setup, SSH requires firewall access (by default, port 22) from the collector to the monitored server.

## 50.3. Limitations

The SolarisMonitor ZenPack does not support monitoring in Solaris Zones or systems containing Solaris Zones. (Implemented with Solaris 10, Solaris Zones act as isolated virtual servers within a single operating system instance.)

## 50.4. Set Solaris Server Monitoring Credentials

All Solaris servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class.

### Note

The SSH monitoring feature will attempt to use key-based authentication before using a configuration properties password value.

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.

- b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Verify the credentials for the service account to access the service.

Name	Description
zCommandUsername	Solaris user with privileges to gather performance information
zCommandPassword	Password for the Solaris user

Table 50.2. Solaris Configuration Properties


3. Click Save to save your changes.

## 50.5. Enable Monitoring

Depending on your Solaris version, you may be able to monitor the server by using SSH or SNMP:

- OpenSolaris and Solaris 10 - Supports SSH or SNMP monitoring
- Solaris 9 - Supports SSH monitoring only

These steps assume that credentials have been set.

1. From Infrastructure > Devices, select select Add a Single Device from  (Add Device menu).
2. Enter the following information:

Name	Description
Device Name	Solaris host to model
Device Class Path	/Server/SSH/Solaris
Discovery Protocol	Set this to <code>auto</code> unless adding a device with a username and password different than found in the device class. If you set this to <code>none</code> , then you must add the credentials (see Section 50.4, “Set Solaris Server Monitoring Credentials”), and then manually model the device.

Table 50.3. Adding Solaris Device Information

3. Click **Add** to add the device.

### 50.5.1. Enabling SSH Monitoring

Follow these steps to configure the system to use SSH to monitor a Solaris server:

1. Navigate to the /Server/SSH/Solaris device class configuration properties.
2. Verify that the zCommandUsername and zCommandPassword properties are set to valid login credentials.
3. Add your Solaris server to the /Server/SSH/Solaris device class.

### 50.5.2. Enabling SNMP Monitoring

Follow these steps to configure the system to use SNMP to monitor a Solaris server:

1. Verify that the `snmpd` process is running on your Solaris server.
2. Navigate to the /Server/Solaris device class configuration properties.

3. Verify that your Solaris server's SNMP community strings are listed in the `zSnmpCommunities` property.
4. Add your Solaris server to the `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class.

### 50.5.3. Enabling LDOM Monitoring

The system supports monitoring of LDOMs on OpenSolaris and Solaris 10 servers. This monitoring is performed by using SNMP.

If you currently are using SNMP to monitor your Solaris server, then there is no additional configuration needed to monitor its LDOMs. If you have configured the system to use SSH to monitor your Solaris server, however, then you must follow these steps to monitor LDOMs:

1. Verify that the `snmpd` process is running on your Solaris server.
2. Navigate to the `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class configuration properties
3. Verify that your Solaris server's SNMP community strings are listed in the `zSnmpCommunities` property.
4. Remodel your Solaris server if it is already in the system. If not, then add it to the `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class.

## 50.6. Resolving CHANNEL\_OPEN\_FAILURE Issues

The `zencommand` daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
ERROR zen.SshClient CHANNEL_OPEN_FAILURE: Authentication failure
WARNING:zen.SshClient:Open of command failed (error code 1): open failed
```

If the `sshd` daemon's log file on the remote device is examined, it may report that the `MAX_SESSIONS` number of connections has been exceeded and that it is denying the connection request. In the OpenSSH daemons, this `MAX_SESSIONS` number is a compile-time option and cannot be reset in a configuration file.

To work around this `sshd` daemon limitation, use the configuration property `zSshConcurrentSessions` to control the number of connections created by `zencommand` to the remote device:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the maximum number of sessions.

Name	Description
<code>zSshConcurrentSessions</code>	Maximum number of sessions supported by the remote device's <code>MAX_SESSIONS</code> parameter. Common values for Solaris is 2 or 10.

Table 50.4. Concurrent SSH Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 50.7. Resolving Command time out Issues

The `zencommand` daemon's log file (`$ZENHOME/collector/zencommand.log`) may show messages stating:

```
WARNING:zen.zencommand:Command timed out on device device_name: command
```

If this occurs, it usually indicates that the remote device has taken too long to return results from the commands. To increase the amount of time to allow devices to return results, change the configuration property `zCommand-CommandTimeout` to a larger value:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Apply an appropriate value for the command timeout.

Name	Description
<code>zCommandCommandTimeout</code>	Time in seconds to wait for commands to complete on the remote device.

Table 50.5. SSH Timeout Configuration Properties

3. Click **Save** to save your changes.

## 50.8. Removal

Use caution when removing this ZenPack; removing it permanently removes:

- Devices located in the `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class
- LDOM-modeled components and associated monitoring data for devices located in `/Server/Solaris`
- The `/Server/SSH/Solaris` device class

## 50.9. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<code>zenmodeler</code>
Performance Collector	<code>zencommand</code>

Table 50.6. Daemons

---

# Chapter 51. Splunk Monitoring

## 51.1. About

Splunk is a search engine for IT data. It lets you search and analyze all the data your IT infrastructure generates from a single location in real time. More information on Splunk can be found online at <http://www.splunk.com/>.

The Splunk ZenPack allows you to monitor the results of a Splunk search. The total count returned by a search can be recorded, thresholded and graphed as well as additional tabular data contained within the results of more advanced searches that make use of Splunk's top filter. The value of monitoring Splunk searches is that it adds an easy and flexible way to monitor log data at aggregate level instead of on a log-by-log basis.

## 51.2. Prerequisites

Resource Manager does not support the free version of Splunk.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.Splunk
Third Party Software	Splunk Version 3 or 4

Table 51.1. Splunk Monitoring Prerequisites

## 51.3. Splunk Data Source Type

The Splunk ZenPack adds the new Splunk data source type to your Resource Manager system. This data source can be used to monitor the results of Splunk searches.

The Splunk data source type has the following fields in common with many other Resource Manager data source types:

- Name: The name given to your data source.
- Enabled: This data source will only be polled if enabled is set to true.

In the event that the Splunk search fails to execute successfully an event will be generated. The following fields control key fields in the generated event. It is important to note that these fields only apply when the Splunk search fails to execute, and not when a threshold on the data point is breached.

- Component
- Event Class
- Event Key
- Severity

The following fields are specific to Splunk type data sources.

- Splunk Server: Hostname or IP address of your Splunk server. If left blank the `SPLUNK_SERVER` environment variable will be used.
- Splunk Port: Port that the splunkd daemon is listening on. Default is 8089. If left blank the `SPLUNK_PORT` environment variable will be used.
- Splunk Username: Splunk username. Default is admin. If left blank the `SPLUNK_USERNAME` environment variable will be used.
- Splunk Password: Splunk password. Default is changeme. If left blank the `SPLUNK_PASSWORD` environment variable will be used.
- Search: Search string exactly as it would be typed into the Splunk search engine. Be careful to use full quotes and not apostrophes where necessary.



## 51.4. Monitoring Splunk Searches

### 51.4.1. Monitoring Results of a Simple Search

The easiest way to get started monitoring your Splunk searches is with a simple search. The following steps will illustrate a simple way to build dynamic Splunk search monitoring.

This example demonstrates how to detect brute-force password cracking attempts on all Linux servers.


1. Build a search in Splunk to verify that you're getting the expected data. This example shows a query of `host="zendev.damsel.loc" minutesago=5 "failed password"`.


The screenshot shows the Splunk search interface. At the top, the search query `host="zendev.damsel.loc" minutesago=5 "failed password"` is entered in the search bar, highlighted with a red box. To the right of the search bar, there is a dropdown menu set to "Last 7 days" and a green search button. Below the search bar, a message states "Your timerange was substituted based on your search string". A green checkmark indicates "104 matching events". There are buttons for "Save search" and "Build report". Below this, the "Timeline" section shows "zoom in" and "zoom out" buttons, and a "Scale" dropdown set to "linear". The main results area shows "104 events in the last 7 days (from 10:04:30 PM to 10:09:30 PM on Saturday, October 3, 2009)". There are navigation buttons for "prev" and "next", and a "Results per page" dropdown set to "10". The first result is displayed in a table:



1	10/3/09 10:09:00.000 PM	Oct 3 22:09:00 zendev sshd[25020]: Failed password for root from 127.0.0.1 port 38969 ssh2
		host=zendev.damsel.loc sourcetype=linux_secure source=/var/log/secure

#### Note

Using a time specifier such as `minutesago=5` within your search can be a useful trick when it comes to monitoring searches from Resource Manager. We will have Resource Manager automatically replace `zendev.damsel.loc` with the appropriate hostname using a `$(here/id)` TALES expression.

2. Create a Resource Manager monitoring template for monitoring this Splunk search.
  - a. From Advanced > Monitoring Templates, click  to add a monitoring template.
 

The Add Template dialog appears.
  - b. Enter `SplunkLinux` in the Name field and select `Linux` in `/Service/Linux` for Template Path, and then click **Submit**.
  - c. Select the newly created template.
  - d. Add a Splunk data source to capture the count of failed passwords.
    - i. In the Data Sources area, click  to add a data source.
    - ii. In the Add Data Source dialog, set the Name to `failedPassword` and the Type to `Splunk`, and then click OK.
    - iii. Double-click the data source to configure it as follows, and then click Save.
      - Splunk Server: *Hostname or IP of your Splunk server*
      - Splunk Port: 8089
      - Splunk Username: *Splunk username* (default is admin)

- Splunk Password: *Splunk password* (default is changeme)
  - Search: `host="{here/id}" minutesago=5 "failed password"`
- iv. Add the *count* data point to the *failedPassword* data source.
    - A. Select Add Data Point from the Data Sources Action menu.
    - B. Set the Name to count and click OK.
  - v. Add a threshold of how many failed passwords constitutes an attack.
    - A. In the Thresholds area, click  to add a threshold.
    - B. Set the Name to password attack and Type to `MinMaxThreshold`, and then click Add.\
    - C. Select `failedPassword_count` from Data Points.
    - D. Set the Max Value to 10.
    - E. Set the Event Class to `/Security/Login/BadPass`.
    - F. Click Save.
  - vi. Add a graph to visualize failed passwords per 5 minutes.
    - A. In the Graph Definitions area, click  to add a graph.
    - B. Set the Name to Splunk - Failed Passwords, and then click **Submit**.
    - C. Double-click the newly created graph to edit it.
    - D. Set the Units to `failed/5min`.
    - E. Set the Min Y to 0.
    - F. Select Manage Graph Points from the Action menu in the Graph Definitions area.
 

The Manage Graph Points dialog appears.
    - G. Select Data Point from the Add menu.
 

The Add Data Point dialog appears.
    - H. Select `failedPassword_count` from Data Point, and then click **Submit**.
    - I. Click into the new count graph point.
    - J. Set the RPN to `300,*` to adjust from `failed/sec` to `failed/5min`.
    - K. Set the Format to `%6.1lf`.
    - L. Set the Legend to Count.
    - M. Click Save.
  - vii. Bind the `SplunkLinux` template to the `/Server/Linux` device class.
    - A. From Infrastructure > Devices, navigate to the `/Server/Linux` device class.
    - B. Click Details.
    - C. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.
    - D. Move the `SplunkLinux` template from the Available area to the Selected area, and then click **Save**.

Now you will have a Failed Passwords graph on all of your Linux servers that visualizes how many failed password attempts have occurred over the last 5 minutes. You will also get a warning severity event anytime more than 10 failed password attempts are made within a 5 minute period.

## 51.4.2. Monitoring Results of a Top Search

Monitoring additional data points within a top search builds on monitoring a simple search. You can extra numeric data from the tabular results returned from a top search using the following steps.

This example demonstrates how you can monitor the logs by source type for all Linux devices.

1. Build a search in Splunk to verify that you're getting the expected data. This example shows a query of `host="zendev.damsel.loc" minutesago=5 | top sourcetype`.

host="zendev.damsel.loc" minutesago=5 | top sourcetype

Last 7 days

Your timerange was substituted based on your search string

537 matching events

Save search Show report

Timeline: zoom in zoom out Scale: linear log

3 results in the last 7 days (from 9:57:09 PM to 10:02:09 PM on Saturday, October 3, 2009)

Options... Results per page 10

Overlay: None

	sourcetype	count	percent
1	linux_audit	271	50.465549
2	linux_secure	265	49.348231
3	cron-too_small	1	0.186220

### Note

Take special note of the names in the sourcetype column and the names of the count and percent columns. These will be used to construct the names of the datapoints within our Splunk data source.

2. Setup a Resource Manager monitoring template just as described in the simple search example.
3. Add a Splunk type data source named sourcetype to the template with the following settings.
  - Splunk Server: *Hostname or IP of your Splunk server*
  - Splunk Port: 8089
  - Splunk Username: *Splunk username* (default is admin)
  - Splunk Password: *Splunk password* (default is changeme)
  - Search: `host="{here/id}" minutesago=5 | top sourcetype`
4. Add data points to the sourcetype data source with the following names. These names come from concatenating the data in the first column of each row with the name of the column name with the target numeric data.
  - linux\_audit\_count
  - linux\_audit\_percent
  - linux\_secure\_count
  - linux\_secure\_percent
5. Create a graph that will show these results within Resource Manager in a useful way.
  - a. Add a graph from the Graph Definitions area of the monitoring template.
  - b. Set the ID to Splunk - Logs by Source Type then click **Submit**.

- c. Set the Units to percent.
- d. Set the Min Y to 0.
- e. Set the Max Y to 100.
- f. Click Save.
- g. Select Manage Graph Points from the Action menu in the Graph Definitions area.

The Manage Graph Points dialog appears.

- h. Select Data Point from the Add menu.

The Add Data Point dialog appears.

- i. Use SHIFT-click or CTRL-click to select the following data points from the list then click **Submit**.

- `sourcetype_linux_audit_percent`
- `sourcetype_linux_secure_percent`

- j. Click into each of the graph points you just added to the graph and set the following properties.

- Line Type: `Area`
- Stacked: `True`
- Format: `%5.1lf%%`
- Legend: `Audit` or `Secure` respectively.

- 6. Bind the monitoring template to the `/Server/Linux` device class just as in the simple search example.

You will now have a graph for all Linux devices that shows what percentage of logs are coming from the audit and secure logs respectively. This ability to track multiple results from a single Splunk search has many other possible uses. Experiment with the top filter in Splunk to see what other useful data you could extract.

## 51.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<code>zencommand</code>

Table 51.2. Splunk Monitoring Daemons

---

# Chapter 52. SSH Monitoring Example

## 52.1. About

The LinuxMonitor ZenPack demonstrates the new Secure Shell (SSH) features. This example ZenPack includes functionality to model and monitor several types of device components for devices placed in the `/Server/SSH/Linux` device class by running commands and parsing the output. Parsing of command output is performed on the Resource Manager server or on a distributed collector. The account used to monitor the device does not require root access or special privileges.

This ZenPack is provided for developers as it provides some examples of how to create SSH performance collecting plugins.

## 52.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.4 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.LinuxMonitor

Table 52.1. Linux SSH Monitoring Example Prerequisites

## 52.3. Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials

All Linux servers must have a device entry in an organizer below the `/Devices/Server/SSH/Linux` device class.

### Tip

The SSH monitoring feature will attempt to use key-based authentication before using a configuration properties password value.

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Select Configuration Properties from the left panel.
4. Verify the credentials for the service account.

Name	Description
zCommandUsername	Linux user with privileges to gather performance information.
zCommandPassword	Password for the Linux user.

Table 52.2. Linux Configuration Properties

## 52.4. Add a Linux Server

The following procedure assumes that credentials have been set.

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Select Add a Single Device from the Add Device list of options.

The Add a Single Device dialog appears.

3. Enter the following information in the dialog:

Name	Description
Name or IP	Linux host to model.
Device Class	/Server/SSH/Linux
Model Device	Select this option unless adding a device with a user name and password different than found in the device class. If you do not select this option, then you must add the credentials (see Section 52.3, "Set Linux Server Monitoring Credentials") and then manually model the device.

Table 52.3. Adding Linux Device Details

4. Click **Add**.

## 52.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 52.4. Daemons

---

# Chapter 53. SQL Transactions

## 53.1. About

The ZenSQLTx ZenPack allows you to test the availability and performance of MySQL, Sybase and Microsoft SQL servers. It provides a SQL data source where user-defined SQL queries can be executed against a database.

## 53.2. Prerequisites

Each remote collector must have an installed MySQL client.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenSQLTx
MySQL client	Each remote collector must have an installed MySQL client

Table 53.1. SQL Transaction Prerequisites


## 53.3. Enable SQL Server Monitoring

Ensure that your Microsoft SQL Server authentication mode is set to "SQL Server and Windows Authentication mode." For more information about this setting and how to change it, refer to:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms188670.aspx>

1. Click the device in the device list.
2. Select Device under Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
3. Select Add Local Template from the Action menu.

The Add Local Template dialog appears.

4. Enter a name of the template, and then click **Submit**.
5. Click the newly created template in the left panel.
6. In the Data Sources area, click .
7. Enter a name for the data source, select `SQL` as the type, and then click **Submit**.
8. Double-click the newly created data source.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

9. Change options as needed.

Option	Description
Database Type	Enter <code>MS SQL</code>
Host Name	Set the host name on which the database is located. This field accepts a TALES expression, such as <code>\${here/id}</code> or <code>\${here/getManageIp}</code>
Port	Set the port on which the database server is listening. If you do not specify a port number, then the default port for the database is used.

Option	Description
Database Name	Specify the name of the database (required).
User	Specify a user name with permission to connect to the database and run queries.
Password	Specify the user password.
SQL Queries	Specify the SQL queries that this data source should execute. A summary of MS SQL syntax is available in the documentation accompanying the software.

Table 53.2. MS SQL Server Transactions Data Source Options

- Click Save to save your changes.

Resource Manager creates a data point that corresponds to the total query time in milliseconds.


- Click **Test** to verify that the database connection can be completed, and that the data returned from the queries are correct.

See the *Resource Manager Administration* guide for more information about setting up thresholds and graphs. To create data points that store the results of queries, see the section titled "Data Points."

## 53.4. Enable Sybase Server Monitoring

- Click the device in the device list.
- Select Device under Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
- Select Add Local Template from the Action menu.

The Add Local Template dialog appears.

- Enter a name of the template, and then click **Submit**.
- Click the newly created template in the left panel.
- In the Data Sources area, click .
- Enter a name for the data source, select `SQL` as the type, and then click **Submit**.
- Double-click the newly created data source.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

- Change options as needed.

Option	Description
Database Type	Enter <code>Sybase</code>
Host Name	Set the host name on which the database is located. This field accepts a TALES expression, such as <code>\${here/id}</code> or <code>\${here/getManageIp}</code>
Port	Set the port on which the database server is listening. If you do not specify a port number, then the default port for the database is used.
Database Name	Specify the name of the database (required).
User	Specify a user name with permission to connect to the database and run queries.
Password	Specify the user password.



Option	Description
SQL Queries	Specify the SQL queries that this data source should execute. A summary of Sybase syntax is available at the Sybase Manuals Web site.

Table 53.3. MySQL Server Transactions Data Source Options

- Click on the Save button to save your changes.

Resource Manager creates a data point that corresponds to the total query time in milliseconds.


- Click **Test** to verify that the database connection can be completed, and that the data returned from the queries are correct.

See the *Resource Manager Administration* guide for more information about setting up thresholds and graphs. To create data points that store the results of queries, see the section titled "Data Points."

## 53.5. Enable MySQL Server Monitoring

- Click the device in the device list.
- Select Device under Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
- Select Add Local Template from the Action menu.

The Add Local Template dialog appears.

- Enter a name of the template, and then click **Submit**.
- Click the newly created template in the left panel.
- In the Data Sources area, click .
- Enter a name for the data source, select `SQL` as the type, and then click **Submit**.
- Double-click the newly created data source.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

- Change options as needed.

Option	Description
Database Type	Enter <code>MySQL</code>
Host Name	Set the host name on which the database is located. This field accepts a TALES expression, such as <code>\${here/id}</code> or <code>\${here/getManageIp}</code>
Port	Set the port on which the database server is listening. If you do not specify a port number, then the default port for the database is used.
Database Name	Specify the name of the database (required).
User	Specify a user name with permission to connect to the database and run queries.
Password	Specify the user password.
SQL Queries	Specify the SQL queries that this data source should execute. A summary of MySQL syntax is available at:  <a href="http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en/sql-syntax.html">http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en/sql-syntax.html</a>

Table 53.4. MySQL Server Transactions Data Source Options

- Click on the Save button to save your changes.

Resource Manager creates a data point that corresponds to the total query time in milliseconds.

- Click **Test** to verify that the database connection can be completed, and that the data returned from the queries are correct.

See the *Resource Manager Administration* guide for more information about setting up thresholds and graphs. To create data points that store the results of queries, see the section titled "Data Points."

## 53.6. Storing Query Results

If any data is retrieved from the database that can be interpreted as a number, that number can be used as a data point. In select statements in which a column name is used, that column name becomes the name of the data point. In select statements in which no column name is specified (for example, aggregate functions such as `count(*)`, `sum()`, or `min()`), the data point name returned is database-dependent:

- MySQL - The column name can be controlled with an 'AS' clause in the query. If used, then the column name is the "cleaned up" result of the 'AS' clause; otherwise, it uses the format: 'q' + query number (beginning with 0) + '\_' + column number in the query (beginning with 0).
- All other databases - The column name uses the format: 'q' + query number (beginning with 0) + '\_' + column number in the query (beginning with 0).

Non-alphanumeric characters (`[^a-zA-Z0-9_]`) are removed from the column name to produce the data point name. Any query results that cannot be interpreted as a number are ignored, and the query numbers will not change.

For example, the queries:

```
select count(*) from Users;select UserName from Users; select count(*) * 4 from Users
```

return these results:

```
Queries completed successfully. | totalTime=2.13289260864 count=3.0 count4=12.0
```

### Note

To use multiple queries (such as in the preceding example), they must be separated with a semicolon.

This example demonstrates multiple results from a single query:

```
select count(*) as count1, count(*)-1001 from history;
```

and returns these results:

```
Queries completed successfully. | totalTime=72.6099014282 count1=99894.0 count1001=98893.0
```

### Notes:

- For SQL Server, use the format `q*_*` if no column name is found.
- The SQL 'as' renaming capability can be used to control the name of the data point.

## 53.7. Troubleshooting

To verify any queries, as well as any permissions or authentication issues, run the **zensql.py** command from the command line. Here's an example against the MySQL database on a Resource Manager server:

```
cd $ZENHOME/ZenPacks/*ZenSQLTx*/Z*/z*/Z*
./zensql.py -t mysql -H localhost -u zenoss -p zenoss -d events 'select \* from events.log;'
Queries completed successfully. | totalTime=54.5899868011
```

### Note

Single quotes (') are required around the SQL statement. Any wild card characters (such as `*`) must be escaped, as shown in the previous example.

For the **zensql.py** command, the database types understood are shown in the following table.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Database Type</b>
mssql	MS SQL Server
sybase	Sybase
mysql	MySQL Server

*Table 53.5. zensql.py Database Types*

## 53.8. Daemons

<b>Type</b>	<b>Name</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

*Table 53.6. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 54. Storage Base

## 54.1. About

The StorageBase ZenPack contains base classes, and reports for ZenPacks that use those base classes.

The ZenPack includes these reports:

- **Licenses** - Shows the storage devices and installed licenses.
- **Clients** - Shows the devices that use the storage devices.
- **Disk Firmware** - After selecting a storage device, displays disk firmware information.

## 54.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 3.0 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.StorageBase, ZenPacks.zenoss.DynamicView

Table 54.1. Prerequisites

---

# Chapter 55. Sugar CRM

## 55.1. About

The SugarCRMMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor their Sugar CRM services.

## 55.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.SugarCRMMonitor

Table 55.1. Sugar CRM Prerequisites

## 55.3. Enable Monitoring

### 55.3.1. Configuring Resource Manager

All SugarCRM devices must exist under the `/Devices/Web/SugarCRM` device class.

1. Navigate to the device or device class under the `/Devices/Server/Tomcat` device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zSugarCRMBase	
zSugarCRMPassword	Password for the <code>zSugarCRMUsername</code> user.
zSugarCRMTestAccount	
zSugarCRMUsername	Username allowed to log into the Sugar CRM server.

Table 55.2. SugarCRM Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.
4. From the left panel, select Device under Monitoring Templates.
5. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

6. Move the SugarCRM template from the Available list to the Selected list.
7. Click **Save**.

The SugarCRM template should now be displayed under the Monitoring Templates for `Device`. You will now be able to start collecting the Sugar CRM metrics from this device.

8. Navigate to Graphs and you should see some placeholders for graphs. After approximately fifteen minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 55.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

*Table 55.3. Daemons*

---

# Chapter 56. vCloud Monitoring

## 56.1. About

VMware vCloud acts as a cloud layer on top of one or more vSphere virtual infrastructures. It allows for easy deployment of public or private clouds with required concepts, such as a self-service portal with built-in multi-tenancy. vCloud enables you to allocate your vSphere resources as desired to provide abstracted compute (CPU and memory) and storage resources to internal or external customers.

You can find more information about cloud computing and vCloud at the VMware site:

<http://www.vmware.com>


The vCloud ZenPack enables Resource Manager to use VMware's Cloud Director native management API to extend in-depth availability, performance, and event monitoring into the vCloud platform. If you provide the vCloud service, you can use the vCloud administrator perspective to gain a complete view of the entire cloud architecture. Or, as a vCloud consumer, you can use the user perspective to obtain organization-specific information.

## 56.2. Adding a Cell

A *cell* (also known as the cloud director or self-service portal) is the service to which Resource Manager connects to perform all discovery and monitoring. Follow these steps to use Resource Manager to discover the cloud and all available details:

1. From the Resource Manager user interface, select Infrastructure > Devices.

The device list appears.

2. Click  and then select Add vCloud Cell.

The Add vCloud Cell dialog appears.

Figure 56.1. Add vCloud Cell

3. Enter information in the dialog to add the vCloud cell:

- **Hostname or IP Address** - Enter the host name or IP address for the cell.
- **Port #** - Enter the cell port number.
- **Username** - Enter the user name, in the form *username@organization*.

For example, if you are the cell administrator, enter `administrator@system`. Alternatively, if your user name is Joe and you are part of the ACME organization, enter `Joe@ACME`.

- **Password** - Enter the password for username.

4. Click **Add**.

A dialog appears with the option to view the job log of the cell being discovered. Select the option to view the job log and monitor the job's completion.

## 56.3. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 3.0.x or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.vCloud

Table 56.1. vCloud Prerequisites

## 56.4. Monitoring

The `zenvcloud` daemon uses the Cloud Director API to perform a range of monitoring tasks. After your cell is added to Resource Manager, monitoring begins automatically.



## 56.5. Performance

Resource Manager collects these metrics directly from the cell for each vDC, irrespective of whether you have administrator or user credentials:

- CPU Limit, Allocated and Used
- Memory Limit, Allocated and Used
- Storage Limit, Allocated and Used

Resource Manager collects these metrics directly from the cell for each Provider vDC if you have administrator credentials:

- CPU Capacity, Allocation and Free
- Memory Capacity, Allocation and Free
- Storage Capacity, Allocation and Free

---

# Chapter 57. VMware

Zenoss offers several options for collecting information from a VMware environment. The most complete solution uses VMware's vSphere API to retrieve information about hosts, virtual machines, clusters, resource pools, and data stores from a vCenter Server. VM migrations are tracked, and all performance data and events visible in the vSphere client are available. Zenoss highly recommends using this solution, described in section 1, "vSphere."

To track individual ESX hosts by using SNMP, see section 2, "VMware ESX via SNMP." This solution models only hosts and virtual machines, and some performance metrics for hosts.

When lower-level, ESX-specific performance data is needed, Zenoss can collect information by using the `esxtop` command, as described in section 3, "VMware esxtop." You can use this solution singly or in concert with either of the other two solutions.

## 57.1. vSphere

Read this section for information about using the ZenVMware ZenPack to collect information from a vCenter Server.

### 57.1.1. About

The ZenVMware ZenPack lets you collect information to monitor your VMware infrastructure. By entering a single set of connection parameters, you allow Resource Manager to:

- Obtain the names and properties of various entities in your VMware infrastructure
- Monitor metrics collected by VMware
- Retrieve VMware events

Resource Manager extracts VMware information through the VMware Infrastructure (VI) SDK, VMware's SOAP interface to its line of server virtualization products. The SDK can be accessed from an individual ESX server or vCenter Server (previously, VirtualCenter Server) instance, which can return information about many ESX servers.

For more information about VMware infrastructure, see VMware's Introduction to VMware Infrastructure

#### 57.1.1.1. VMware Events

VMware records a wide range of events that are available through the VI SDK. Resource Manager extracts these events and makes them available in the event console.

Status	Severity	Device	Component	Event Class	Summary	First Seen	Last Seen	Count
!	!	esxwin		/VMware/Fail	Task VMware Update Manager Update Download on Datacenters in cannot be completed: The task	2010-06-19 03:20:40	2010-07-10 03:19:08	3
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-64-2	/VMware/Fail	test-rhel54-64-2 cannot shut down the guest OS on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: Cannot	2010-07-05 10:50:03	2010-07-05 10:50:03	1
!	!	esx6.zenoss.loc	test-suse103-64-2	/VMware/Fail	test-suse103-64-2 cannot shut down the guest OS on esx6.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: Cann	2010-07-02 10:57:45	2010-07-02 10:57:45	1
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-32-2	/VMware/Fail	Cannot reboot the guest OS for test-rhel54-32-2 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo. The atte	2010-06-22 19:37:24	2010-06-22 19:37:24	1
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-32-2	/VMware/Fail	Cannot power Off test-rhel54-32-2 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The attempted operati	2010-06-22 19:37:07	2010-06-22 19:37:07	1
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-32-2	/VMware/Fail	Cannot suspend test-rhel54-32-2 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The attempted operatio	2010-06-22 19:36:55	2010-06-22 19:36:55	1
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-64-1	/VMware/Fail	Cannot power Off test-rhel54-64-1 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The attempted operati	2010-06-22 16:43:07	2010-06-22 16:43:07	1
✓	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-64-2	/VMware/Fail	Cannot suspend test-rhel54-64-2 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The attempted operation cann	2010-06-22 15:49:03	2010-06-22 15:50:10	2
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-64-2	/VMware/Fail	Cannot power Off test-rhel54-64-2 on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The attempted operati	2010-06-22 15:49:58	2010-06-22 15:49:58	1
!	!	esx5.zenoss.loc	test-rhel54-64-2	/VMware/Fail	test-rhel54-64-2 cannot shut down the guest OS on esx5.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo: The atte	2010-06-22 15:48:44	2010-06-22 15:48:44	1
!	!	esx4.zenoss.loc	test-tomcat	/VMware/Fail	Cannot migrate test-tomcat from esx4.zenoss.loc to esx9.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo	2010-06-21 13:18:27	2010-06-21 13:53:27	2
!	!	esxwin	Connection	/VMware/Connect	In zenvmwareevents, Networking error [113:No route to host] while trying to connect to VMware en	2010-06-24 03:16:30	2010-07-14 03:18:37	3
!	!	esx9.storage1		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Datastores/esxwin_datastore-14036 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:38	2010-07-26 12:33:38	1
!	!	esx10.storage1		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Datastores/esxwin_datastore-14582 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:38	2010-07-26 12:33:38	1
!	!	netapptst		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Datastores/esxwin_datastore-17870 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:38	2010-07-26 12:33:38	1
!	!	esx11.storage1		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Datastores/esxwin_datastore-15585 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:38	2010-07-26 12:33:38	1
!	!	esx12.storage1		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Datastores/esxwin_datastore-9610 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:38	2010-07-26 12:33:38	1
!	!	esx11.zenoss.loc		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Hosts/esxwin_host-15582 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:35	2010-07-26 12:33:35	1
!	!	esx12.zenoss.loc		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Hosts/esxwin_host-9607 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:35	2010-07-26 12:33:35	1
!	!	esx10.zenoss.loc		/Status/VMware	/VMware/esxwin/Hosts/esxwin_host-14579 not found on target VMware endpoint	2010-07-26 12:33:35	2010-07-26 12:33:35	1

Figure 57.1. VMware Events (Event Console)

The device column shows the ID of the VMware entity with which the event is associated, unless the event is specific to a guest VM. In that case, the Device column shows the ID of the host, and the Component column displays the ID of the guest.

If a VMware host is disconnected, performance collection stops and the interface reflects its disconnected status.

Resource Manager maps the VMware event to the event class and assigns the event a severity level. The event class appears in the Event Class column.

To see detailed event information and the original VMware event type, double-click the event row.

The VMware event type is the value shown for eventGroup.

Cannot migrate test-tomcat from esx4.zenoss.loc to esx9.zenoss.loc in

**Device:** [esx4.zenoss.loc](#)  
**Component:** [test-tomcat](#)  
**Event Class:** [/VMware/Fail](#)  
**Status:** 0  
**Start Time:** 2010/06/21 13:18:27.000  
**Stop Time:** 2010/06/21 13:53:27.000  
**Count:** 2

Hide details

prodState 1000  
stateChange 2010/06/21 13:53:31.000  
facility unknown  
eventClassKey VMwareFail  
agent zenvmwareevents  
dedupid esxwin\_host-1475/esxwin\_vm-13491/VMware/Fail/5/Cannot migrate test-tomcat from esx4.zenoss.loc to esx9.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo  
manager zenoss.zenoss.loc  
Location /MD  
ownerid  
firstTime 2010/06/21 13:18:27.000  
eventClass /VMware/Fail  
message Cannot migrate test-tomcat from esx4.zenoss.loc to esx9.zenoss.loc in Hosting.com CoLo

Figure 57.2. Event Details

### 57.1.1.1.1. Migration Events

When a VMotion guest migrates from one host to another, VMware records events to signal its progress. When a VmMigrated event occurs, it is duplicated to become two events, which are mapped to the /VMware/Migration

event class in Resource Manager. One event contains the originating host as the device; the other lists the destination host as the device.

An event command (navigate to Events > Event Manager, and then select Commands in the left panel) reacts to these events by remodeling the two hosts and generating an updated view of the guests. The time required to produce updated guest lists (from the time migration completes) is between 30 seconds and four minutes.

### 57.1.2. Prerequisites

The VMware VI API is required. It is compatible with VMware Infrastructure 3 (including ESX Server 3.5, VirtualCenter Server 2.5, and ESX Server 3i) and vSphere 4 and 5 (including ESX 4, ESXi 4 and 5, vCenter Server 4 and 5). It is not explicitly compatible with ESX Server 3.0.x or VirtualCenter Server 2.0.x, or any previous versions.

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 3.0 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenVMware ZenPacks.zenoss.StorageBase ZenPacks.zenoss.DynamicView

Table 57.1. Prerequisites

#### Warning

If the time on the monitored VC/ESX server is too far from the time on the box where the `zenvmwareperf` daemon is running, the daemon will not collect any data.

### 57.1.3. Enable Monitoring

Follow these steps to begin monitoring your VMware servers.

1.

From Infrastructure > Devices, select Add VMware Infrastructure from .

The Add VMware dialog appears.

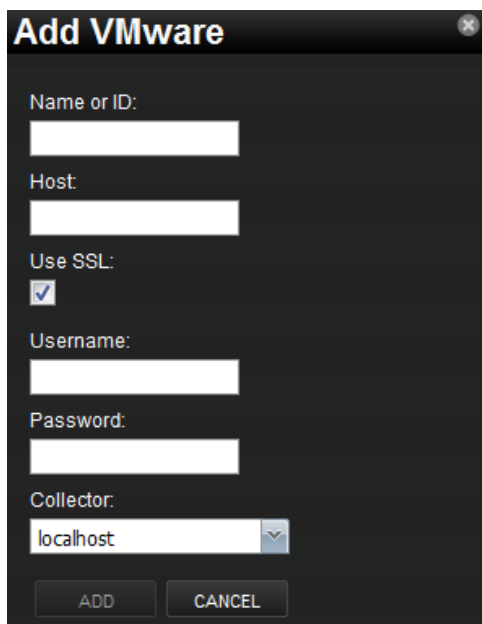


Figure 57.3. Add VMware Infrastructure Dialog

2. Enter parameters to connect to the ESX server or vCenter Server that will provide monitoring capabilities.
  - **Name or ID** -Enter a name for the infrastructure to be monitored.
  - **Host** - Enter the hostname of the server providing the VI SDK connections. This can be an individual ESX server or the location of a vCenter Server instance.
  - Use SSL - Select this option if the connection should be made by using SSL encryption.
  - Username - Enter the user name used to authenticate.
  - Password - Enter the password used to authenticate.
  - Collector - Select the collector to use to retrieve information from the VI SDK endpoint.
3. Click Add.

Resource Manager begins modeling the VMware infrastructure. It places the information in the device hierarchy under `/Devices/VMware/ID`, where ID is the value of the ID field you entered during setup.

### Note

Do not model the same VMware infrastructure client with different names.

## 57.1.4. Viewing VMware Devices

Resource Manager represents these VMware entities as devices:

- Hosts (ESX servers)
- Resource Pools
- Data stores
- Clusters

Each of these categories is represented as a device class under the newly created organizer. For example, if the ID of an infrastructure is `esxwin`, then four device classes appear below `/Devices/VMware/esxwin`: Clusters, Datastores, Hosts, and ResourcePools.



Figure 57.4. VMware Device Classes

If the SDK endpoint is an individual ESX server, then the Clusters organizer will be empty. (A VMware cluster is a concept external to an individual host.)

## 57.1.5. Viewing Guest Virtual Machines

To view guest VMs on an ESX server:

1. Navigate to a device in the Hosts class.
2. Select VMware Guest in the host's component tree (in the left panel).

The Virtual Guest Devices list appears.

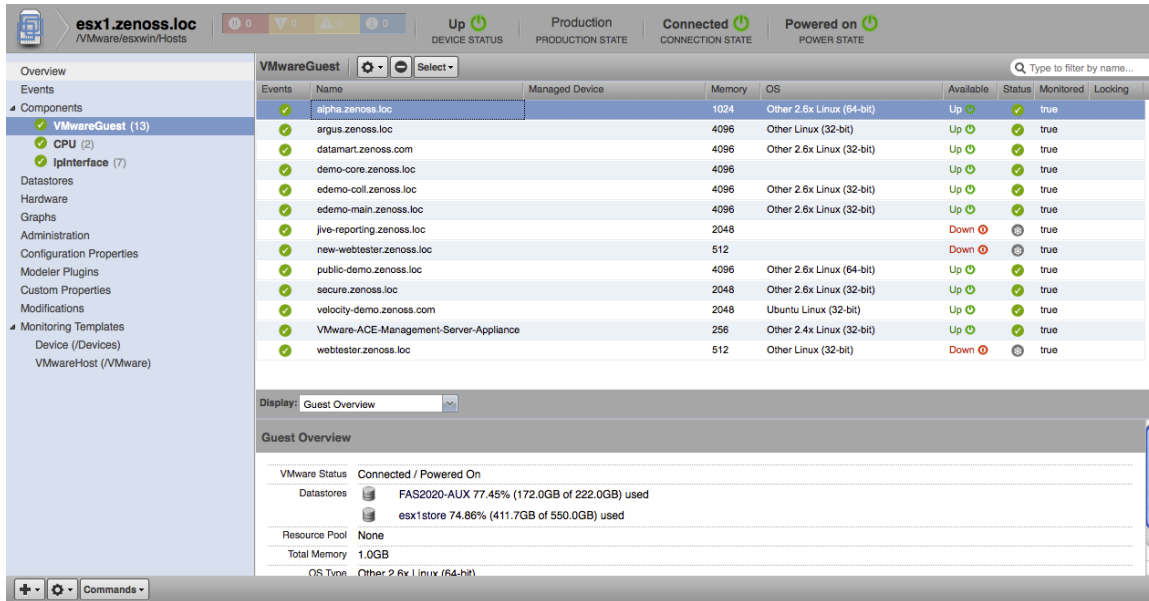


Figure 57.5. Virtual Guest Devices

In the list, the first column contains a link to the guest component, named the same name as the VM. (This is not necessarily the same as the VM hostname.) If the VM has been modeled elsewhere in Resource Manager, then a link to that device appears in the Managed Device column.

As shown in the previous figure, none of the VMs are being monitored in their "native" device classes. For example, the guest named "ldap test box" is a Linux VM with the hostname "public-demo.zenoss.loc." If you add that device to /Devices/Server/Linux, a link will appear.



Figure 57.6. Virtual Guest Devices - Managed Device

Click the Name link to go to the Guest component status page, which shows the VM's relationships to other VMware entities, and provides access to VMware-specific metrics and events.

Click the managed device link to go to the Device status page, which contains information about the device as a separate Linux or Windows server. These two status pages link to each other.

## 57.1.6. Enabling Data Collection Using resxtop

Follow these steps to enable gathering of VMware host and guest statistics.

### 57.1.6.1. Gathering VMware Host Statistics

By default, data collection using `resxtop` statistics is disabled. To enable it:

1. From the Resource Manager interface, select Advanced, and then select Monitoring Templates.
2. Locate and select the VMWareHost\_esxstop template.
3. For each of the data sources:
  - a. Click the data source to open it.
  - b. Select the Enabled option to enable data collection.
  - c. Click **Save**.

Data collection will begin shortly after update, followed by visible graph data.

For information about the collected data, see Section 7, "Batch Mode," in the document titled "Interpreting esxstop Statistics" at the following location:

<http://communities.vmware.com/docs/DOC-9279>

### 57.1.6.2. Gathering VMware Guest Statistics

By default, data collection using `resxstop` statistics is disabled. To enable it:

1. From the Resource Manager interface, select Advanced, and then select Monitoring Templates.
2. Locate and select the VMWareGuest\_esxstop template.
3. For each of the data sources:
  - a. Click the data source to open it.
  - b. Select the Enabled option to enable data collection.
  - c. Click **Save**.

Data collection will begin shortly after update, followed by visible graph data.


For information about the collected data, see Section 7, "Batch Mode," in the document titled "Interpreting esxstop Statistics" at the following location:

<http://communities.vmware.com/docs/DOC-9279>

### 57.1.7. Adding a Custom Metric

In Resource Manager, metric-bearing VMware entities (such as Hosts, Guests, and Clusters) have associated templates. These templates define which metrics are gathered. By default, only a subset is collected; however, you can add more by adding data sources to the templates. Once created, you can then create custom graphs from these data sources.

To create a custom data source:

1. Navigate to Advanced > Monitoring Templates and select the template to which you want to add the data source.
2. From the Data Sources area, click  to add a data source.

The Add Data Source dialog appears.

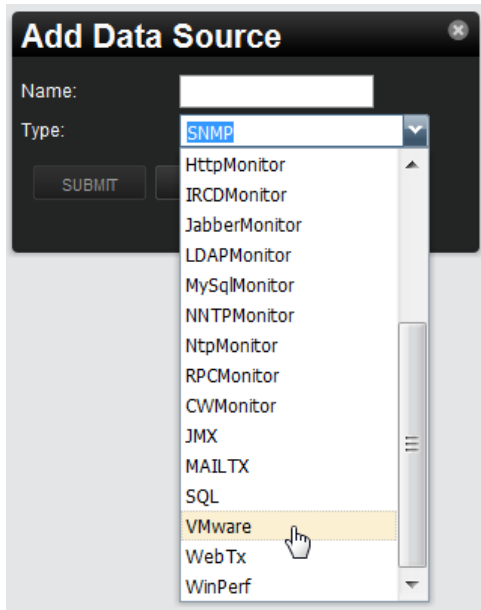


Figure 57.7. Add Data Source

3. Enter a name and select the `VMware` data source from the list of options, and then click **Submit**.
4. Double-click the newly created data source to edit it. Enter or select values:
  - **Event Key** - Not used.
  - **Severity** - Not used.
  - **Group, Counter, and Rollup Type** - VMware-specific data points are determined by this trio of strings. For information about each of these metrics, see the chapter titled "Performance Counters Reference" in the VI SDK Programming Guide.
  - **Instance** - Certain metrics are further specified by an instance name. For example, the metric whose Group/Counter/Rollup Type triplet is Network/Network Data Receive Rate/average requires the name of the actual interface for full specification. In Resource Manager, this metric is represented by the data source `nicRx` on the template `VMwareNic`. The `VMwareNic` template is bound to the individual host interfaces, each of whose ID is the interface name. In this case, the instance name is `$(here/instanceId)`.
5. Click Save to save the new data source.

### 57.1.8. Moving VMware Devices Between Collectors

If you move a VMware device to a different collector, you must follow one of these procedures to force the changes to take effect:

- Restart the collector daemons. To do this, go to `Advanced > Settings`, select `Daemons` in the left panel, and then click **Restart** in the row for each of these daemons:
  - `zenvmwaremodeler`
  - `zenvmwareperf`
  - `zenvmwareevents`

#### Note

Alternatively, as user `zenoss`, enter the following commands to stop and then restart these Resource Manager daemons:

```
zenvmwaremodeler restart
zenvmwareperf restart
zenvmwareevents restart
```



OR

- Navigate to the page for the organizer that represents the VMware endpoint (for example, `Devices/VMware, myEndpoint`), and then select Push Changes from the Action menu.

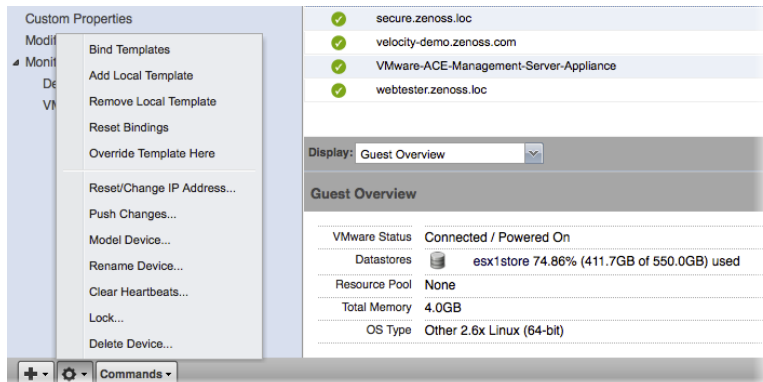


Figure 57.8. Push Changes

### 57.1.9. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenvmwaremodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zenvmwareperf</b>
Event Collector	<b>zenvmwareevents</b>

Table 57.2. Daemons

#### 57.1.9.1. Tuning Options

These collector daemons offer options for tuning performance. Use them to control data amounts and the rate at which data comes back to be modified.

- `zenvmwareperf`

Option	Description
<code>--callChunkSize= <i>Value</i></code>	Specifies the number of performance requests to submit at the same time.
<code>--callChunkSleep= <i>Value</i></code>	Specifies the time to sleep, in seconds, between performance requests.

Table 57.3. Daemons

- `zenvmwareevents`

Option	Description
<code>--eventChunkSize= <i>Value</i></code>	Specifies the number of events to gather at one time.
<code>--eventChunkSleep= <i>Value</i></code>	Specifies the time to sleep, in seconds, between event requests.

Table 57.4. Daemons

## 57.2. VMware ESX via SNMP

Read this section for information about using the VMwareESXMonitor ZenPack to track individual ESX hosts via SNMP.

### 57.2.1. About

The VMwareESXMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor VMware ESX hosts and their guests. This ZenPack:

- Extends ZenModeler to discover guests running on the ESX host.
- Provides screens and templates for collecting and displaying resources allocated to the guests.

This ZenPack requires the ZenossVirtualHostMonitor ZenPack be installed as a prerequisite.

### 57.2.2. Monitoring VMware ESX Servers

To monitor VMware ESX servers:

1. Make sure you have SNMP connectivity to your ESX 3 servers.
2. Create your ESX services using the /Servers/Virtual Hosts/ESX device class.

#### Note

If you have already modeled these servers, then remove and recreate them under the ESX device class. Do not move them.

3. Select the Guest menu and ensure that the guest hosts were found when the devices were added.
4. Using the VMware vSphere client, add Resource Manager to the list of destinations for SNMP traps. (See Administration > vCenterServerSettings > SNMP.) For information about configuring traps for a stand-alone ESX 3 server, see "About SNMP and VMware Infrastructure" at:

[http://www.vmware.com/pdf/vi3\\_35/esx\\_3/r35u2/vi3\\_35\\_25\\_u2\\_admin\\_guide.pdf](http://www.vmware.com/pdf/vi3_35/esx_3/r35u2/vi3_35_25_u2_admin_guide.pdf)

Notes:

- There is a link to the VMware Web interface on each ESX server Status page.
- If the name of the Guest under ESX is the same as the name of a device being monitored directly by Resource Manager, a link is provided to take you directly to that device from the Guest list.

### 57.2.3. Enabling SNMP Subagents

ESX servers (Version 4.x and higher) contain an SNMP subagent from VMware. This subagent provides all information related to VMware (such as virtual machines and their status). By default, the subagent is disabled.

The VMware SNMP subagent does not provide information about the ESX server itself (such as processes, memory, CPU, or performance data).

#### Note

The VMware SNMP subagent cannot share port 161. If any other agent is using that port (usually the NET-SNMP agent), the subagent cannot start.

To fully monitor the ESX machine on your Resource Manager server, you must enable both SNMP agents (NET-SNMP and the VMware subagent). Follow these steps to enable both agents using an SNMP proxy:

1. Stop the snmpd service through the service console (via SSH) on the ESX host:

```
service snmpd stop
```

2. Add a proxy line to the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file:

```
proxy -v 1 -c public udp:127.0.0.1:171 .1.3.6.1.4.1.6876
```

This line will use the snmpd service to access the VMware MIB on the subagent running at port 171.

3. Using the VMware vSphere CLI (command line interface), bind the VMware SNMP agent to port 171, and then enable the subagent by using these commands:

```
vicfg-snmp.pl --server <hostname|IP address> --username <username> --password <password> -c \
public --port 171
vicfg-snmp.pl --server <hostname|IP address> --username <username> --password <password> -E
```

4. Via SSH, go back to the ESX host. Restart the mgmt-vmware service (hostd) and the snmp service. On the ESX host from the service, enter:

```
service mgmt-vmware restart
service snmpd restart
```

### 57.2.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	zenmodeler
Performance Collector	zenperfsnmp

Table 57.5. Daemons

## 57.3. VMware esxtop

Read this section for information about using the EsxTop ZenPack to collect VMware-specific performance data.

### 57.3.1. About

The EsxTop ZenPack uses the `resxtop` command to gather performance information about VMware Infrastructure™ ESX™ servers. It can be used alone, or with one of the other VMware ZenPacks. When used alone, a basic modeler creates virtual machines under the `/Devices/Server/Virtual Hosts/EsxTop` device class for any host device that is added and modeled. Otherwise, performance data can be collected for the ESX hosts modeled by the other ZenPacks.

### 57.3.2. Prerequisites

To implement this ZenPack, you must:

- Install the OpenSSL development package, Version 0.9.7 or higher
- Install the VMware vSphere CLI, Version 4.1 or higher, on the collectors (as described in the section titled Installing Prerequisite Libraries).
- Update the ZenossVirtualHostMonitor ZenPack to Version 2.3.5.

#### 57.3.2.1. Installing Prerequisite Libraries

The VMware vSphere CLI is required for access to the `resxtop` command, which enables Resource Manager to model and gather performance information about individual ESX servers.

Follow these steps to install the CLI and required software:

1. If you have not yet installed it, install the OpenSSL development package. For example, for an RPM-based system, enter:

```
yum install openssl-devel
```

2. From your VMware account, download the VMware vSphere CLI.

#### Note

For downloads and documentation, go to:

<http://downloads.vmware.com/d/details/vcli41/ZHcqYmRoaCpiZHRAag==>

3. Copy the package to each Resource Manager collector.

## 4. For each collector:

- a. Expand the package file.
- b. Run the following command to install the package:

```
./vmware-install.pl
```

- c. As the zenoss user, run the following command to verify successful installation:

```
resxtop --server myESXServer --user userOnRemoteEsxServerAllowedToUseEsxTop -b -n 1 -a
```

The `resxtop` command prompts for a password.

- d. Enter the password for a user with permissions on the remote ESX server.

If the command is working correctly, then a screen displays with several pages of command output.

- e. Create a symbolic link from the location that the `resxtop` command was installed into the `$ZENHOME/libexec` directory. This allows the `check_esxtop` command to automatically determine which binary to run. For example:

```
cd $ZENHOME/libexec
ln -s PathToResxtop
```


- f. Test the `check_esxtop` command by showing the VMs on the remote server:

```
$ZENHOME/ZenPacks/Ze*EsxTop*/Z*/z*/E*/libexec/check_esxtop --server=myEsxserver \
--user=userOnRemoteEsxServerAllowedToUseEsxTop --password=password --showvms
```

### 57.3.3. Enabling the ZenPack

Follow these steps to set up the EsxTop ZenPack. From the Resource Manager interface, add a host:


1. From Infrastructure > Devices, navigate to the `/Devices/Server/Virtual Hosts/EsxTop` device class.

2. From , select Add a Single Device.

The Add a Single Device dialog appears.

3. Enter a host name or IP address.
4. De-select the Model Device option.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Select the newly added device in the list.

The device overview appears.

7. Click **Details**, and then select Configuration Properties in the left panel.
8. Enter login credentials for the `zCommandUsername` and `zCommandPassword` configuration properties, and then click **Save**.
9. If the device has an SNMP agent installed, update the ESX device configuration with the appropriate SNMP configuration information, and then add any desired modeler plugins.
10. From  (Action menu), select Model device.

### 57.3.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<b>zenmodeler</b>
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 57.6. Daemons

---

# Chapter 58. Web Page Response Time

## 58.1. About

ZenPacks.zenoss.HttpMonitor monitors connection response time to an HTTP server and determines whether specific content exists on a Web page.

## 58.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.HttpMonitor

Table 58.1. HTTP Prerequisites

## 58.3. Enable Monitoring

Follow these steps to enable monitoring:

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Select Bind Templates from the Action menu.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

5. Add the HttpMonitor template to the list of selected templates, and then click **Submit**.

### Note

Prior to Zenoss 2.4, this template was not available. If your Zenoss release is prior to Zenoss 2.4 you must create the template, data source and graphs manually. See the *Resource Manager Administration* guide for more details on these steps.

6. The HttpMonitor template is added to the list of monitoring templates. You can now begin collecting Web server metrics from the device.

## 58.4. Check for a Specific URL or Specify Security Settings

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Create a local copy of the template.
5. Select the newly created local template copy.
6. Select the HttpMonitor data source, and then select View and Edit Details from the Action menu.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

7. Change data source options as needed, and then click **Save**.

Option	Description
Port	The port to connect to HTTP server (default 80).
Use SSL	Use SSL for the connection
Url	Address of the web page.
Basic Auth User	If the website requires credentials, specify the username here.
Basic Auth Password	Password for the user.
Redirect Behavior	If the web site returns an HTTP redirect, should the probe follow the redirect or create an event? Possible event severities are OK, Warning, and Critical.

Table 58.2. HTTPMonitor Content Checking Data Source Options

## 58.5. Check for Specific Content on the Web Page

This procedure allows Resource Manager to create an event if content at the web page does not match the expected output.

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Create a local copy of the template.
5. Select the newly created local template copy.
6. Select the HttpMonitor data source, and then select View and Edit Details from the Action menu.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

7. Change data source options as needed, and then click **Save**.

Option	Description
Regular Expression	A Python regular expression to match text in the web page.
Case Sensitive	Is the regular expression case-sensitive or not?
Invert Expression	If you would like to test to see if the web page does <b>not</b> contain content matched by a regular expression, check this box.

Table 58.3. HTTPMonitor Content Checking Data Source Options

## 58.6. Tuning for Site Responsiveness

1. Select Infrastructure from the navigation bar.
2. Click the device name in the device list.

The device overview page appears.

3. Expand Monitoring Templates, and then select Device from the left panel.
4. Create a local copy of the template.
5. Select the newly created local template copy.
6. Select the HttpMonitor data source, and then select View and Edit Details from the Action menu.

The Edit Data Source dialog appears.

7. Change data source options as needed, and then click **Save**.

Option	Description
Timeout (seconds)	Seconds before connection times out (default: 60)
Cycle Time (seconds)	Number of seconds between collection cycles (default: 300 or five minutes)

Table 58.4. HTTPMonitor Tunables Data Source Options

## 58.7. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zencommand</b>

Table 58.5. Daemons

---

# Chapter 59. WebSphere Application Server

## 59.1. About

The WebSphere monitoring feature allows Resource Manager to monitor IBM WebSphere Application Servers (WAS).

## 59.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWebTx 2.5 or higher, ZenPacks.zenoss.WebsphereMonitor

Table 59.1. WebSphere Prerequisites

## 59.3. Enable Monitoring

### 59.3.1. Configure WAS for Monitoring

To successfully monitor WebSphere, you must have the Performance Monitoring Infrastructure (PMI) servlet installed and enabled on your WebSphere instance. For more information, please see the IBM WebSphere documentation.

### 59.3.2. Configure Resource Manager

1. Navigate to the device or device class under the `/Devices/Server/Tomcat` device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:
    - a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
    - b. Click **Details**.
    - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit the appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Property	Description
zWebsphereURLPath	Path to the PMI servlet on a WebSphere instance.  The default value is the default path on a WebSphere installation:  <code>wasPerTool/servlet/perfservlet</code>
zWebsphereUser	Used for HTTP basic authentication. This field is not required, and is empty by default.
zWebspherePassword	Used for HTTP basic authentication. This field is not required, and is empty by default.
zWebsphereAuthRealm	Used for HTTP basic authentication. This field is not required, and is empty by default.



Property	Description
zWebsphereServer	Used by the provided template to build the xpath queries for the data to collect. You must supply a value for this field. There is no default value.
zWebsphereNode	Used by the provided template to build the queries for the data to collect. You must supply a value for this field.

Table 59.2. WebSphere Configuration Properties

- Click Save to save your changes.
- Select Device under Monitoring Templates in the left panel.
- From the Action menu, select Bind Templates.

The Bind Templates dialog appears.

- Move the Websphere template from the Available list to the Selected list, and then click **Save**.

The Websphere template should now be displayed under the Monitoring Templates for *Device*. You will now be able to start collecting the WebSphere metrics from this device.

- Navigate to Graphs and you should see some place holders for graphs. After approximately 15 minutes you should see the graphs start to become populated with information.

## 59.4. Examples

Once the PMI module has been installed into WAS, you can generate the PMI XML file. You then can use this file to complete the monitoring template.

This example shows how to obtain the configuration properties required for basic monitoring functionality. It further shows how to add other metrics to be monitored.

You can generate the PMI XML file by browsing to this URL:

<http://WASserver/wasPerfTool/servlet/perfservlet>

### Note

This is the default WAS server location. The URL should match the configuration property setting used in the template.

where *WASserver* is the WAS server's host name or IP address.

The following example XML file results:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE PerformanceMonitor SYSTEM "/wasPerfTool/dtd/performancemonitor.dtd">
<PerformanceMonitor responseStatus="success" version="6.1.0.21">
  <Node name="serverA">
    <Server name="serverAB">
      <Stat name="serverABC">
        ...
        <Stat name="Dynamic Caching">
          <Stat name="Object: ws/WSSecureMap">
            <Stat name="Object Cache">
              <Stat name="Counters">
                <CountStatistic ID="21" count="0" lastSampleTime="1242827146039" name="HitsInMemoryCount" \
                  startTime="1242827146039" unit="N/A"/>
                <CountStatistic ID="28" count="5" lastSampleTime="1243610826245" name="MissCount" \
                  startTime="1242827146039" unit="N/A"/>
              </Stat>
            </Stat>
          </Stat>
        </Stat>
      </Stat>
    </Node>
  </PerformanceMonitor>
```

```

...
  </Stat>
</Server>
</Node>
</PerformanceMonitor>

```

In the previous example, configuration properties settings are:

- zWebsphereNode: serverA
- zWebsphereServer: serverAB

You might want to add counters beyond the standard counters. For example, you might want to add the HitsInMemoryCount and MissCount counters (related to dynamic caching). To do this, you would add the following twill commands to the Script tab of your WebSphere data source:

```

xpathextract HitsInMemoryCount '/PerformanceMonitor/Node[@name="{here/zWebsphereNode}"]/\
Server[@name="{here/zWebsphereServer}"]/Stat[@name="server"]/Stat[@name="Dynamic Caching"]/\
Stat[@name="Object: ws/WSecureMap"]/Stat[@name="Object Cache"]/Stat[@name="Counters"]/\
CountStatistic[@name="HitsInMemoryCount"]/attribute::count' xpathextract MissCount \
'/PerformanceMonitor/Node[@name="{here/zWebsphereNode}"]/\
Server[@name="{here/zWebsphereServer}"]/Stat[@name="server"]/Stat[@name="Dynamic Caching"]/\
Stat[@name="Object: ws/WSecureMap"]/Stat[@name="Object Cache"]/Stat[@name="Counters"]/\
CountStatistic[@name="MissCount"]/attribute::count'

```

After adding these commands, you would then add the data points for HitsInMemoryCount and MissCount, and then add the data points to a graph.

## 59.5. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwebtx

Table 59.3. Daemons

---

# Chapter 60. Xen Virtual Hosts

## 60.1. About

The XenMonitor ZenPack allows you to monitor Xen para-virtualized domains with Resource Manager.

This ZenPack:

- Extends ZenModeler to discover guests running on the Xen host.
- Provides screens and templates for collecting and displaying resources allocated to guests.

The XenMonitor ZenPack requires the ZenossVirtualHostMonitor ZenPack to be installed as a prerequisite.

## 60.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss Version 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.XenMonitor ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenossVirtualHostMonitor

Table 60.1. Xen Virtual Hosts Prerequisites

## 60.3. Model Hosts and Guest

For each Xen server, follow this procedure:

1. Optionally, place an SSH key to your Xen server to allow the zenoss user from the Resource Manager server to log in as root without requiring further credentials.
2. Create the Xen server in the `/Servers/Virtual Hosts/Xen` device class.

### Warning

If you have this server modeled already, remove the server and recreate it under the Xen device class. Do not move it.

3. Select the Guest menu and ensure that the guest hosts were found during the modeling process.

## 60.4. Daemons

Type	Name
Modeler	<code>zenmodeler</code>
Performance Collector	<code>zencommand</code>

Table 60.2. Daemons

---

# Chapter 61. zenwebserver

## 61.1. About

Use zenwebserver to deploy and manage multiple Zope instances. It includes a software load balancer (nginx), and replaces zopectl for Resource Manager users.

zenwebserver is enabled by the WebScale ZenPack, which is included by default when you install Resource Manager.

## 61.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.1.1
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.WebScale

Table 61.1. Prerequisites

## 61.3. Installation

To install zenwebserver, enter this command:

```
zenpack --install ZenPacks.zenoss.WebScale-1.0.0-py2.7-Platform-Architecture.egg
```

The installation process replaces zopectl in the startup script (or in the `daemons.txt` file) with zenwebserver. After installation, use zenwebserver as the control script to manage the application server.

### Note

If you have multiple Zope instances deployed behind a custom load balancer setup, installation of this ZenPack will not install zenwebserver as your UI control script. You must install it manually after determining and executing your migration strategy.

## 61.4. Usage

zenwebserver *Arguments Options Targets*

### 61.4.1. Arguments

Valid arguments are:

- **run** - Starts Zope in the foreground, on the port normally used by the load balancer. Neither the load balancer nor other Zope servers are used.
- **start** - Starts the load balancer and Zope servers. If any are running already, they are ignored.
- **stop** - Stops the load balancer and Zope servers. If any are stopped already, they are ignored.
- **restart** - Stops and then restarts the load balancer and Zope servers. To minimize downtime, the load balancer is restarted first, and then each Zope server in turn. This ensures that the Zope server pool is never empty.
- **status** - Provides status information. It prints the status of the load balancer, including its PID.
- **deploy** - Creates or destroys Zope instances. It adds or removes instances from the server pool and updates the load balancer to reference the altered server pool. If the load balancer is running already, then its configuration is reloaded without stopping it.
- **reload** - Reloads the load balancer configuration. For example, if you make a change to the nginx configuration to listen at a different port, reload it to use the new port without restarting.
- **attach** - Returns a detached Zope server to the server pool and updates the load balancer.

- **detach** - Removes a Zope server from the server pool and updates the load balancer. (Zope continues to run, but does not get traffic from the load balancer.)
- **debug** - Deploys a Zope server without adding it to the server pool, starting it immediately in the foreground. This server can only be accessed directly. The server is automatically destroyed upon exiting the process.
- **help** - Returns command usage information.
- **configure** - Generates a new `nginx.conf` file, based on properties in `$ZENHOME/etc/zenwebserver.conf`. The properties and their defaults are shown in the following table.

Property	Default Value	Description
<code>httpPort</code>	8080	Specifies the port to accept the HTTP request.
<code>useSSL</code>	False	Specifies whether SSL config should be used. Set to a value of True to enable.
<code>sslPort</code>	443	Specifies the port to use if <code>useSSL</code> is set.
<code>sslCert</code>	<code>ZENHOME/etc/ssl/zenoss.crt</code>	Specifies the path to the SSL certificate if <code>useSSL</code> is set.
<code>sslKey</code>	<code>ZENHOME/etc/ssl/zenoss.key</code>	Specifies the path to the SSL key if <code>useSSL</code> is set.

The generated configuration should not be edited. Use the properties in `$ZENHOME/etc/zenwebserver.conf` to customize generation of the `nginx.conf` file.

After running `zenwebserver configure`, you must `reload` (`zenwebserver reload`) or `restart` (`zenwebserver restart`) for the new configuration to take effect.

### 61.4.2. Options

Valid options are:

- **-v** - Prints more information, including the status of each Zope server, the ports at which the processes are listening, and the servers currently detached from the server pool.

### 61.4.3. Targets

Several commands accept one or more targets against which the command should be executed. If you do not specify a target, the command runs the action against all targets.

Valid targets are:

- **loadbalancer** - Load balancer. Alternatively, you can specify:

```
nginx
```

- **servers** - All Zope servers.
- **server $n$**  - Specific Zope server, where  $n$  is the server number. Alternatively, you can specify just a server number or numbers. For example, both of the following commands stop Zope servers 2 and 3:

```
zenwebserver stop server2 server3
```

```
zenwebserver stop 2 3
```

### 61.4.4. Command Use and Examples

#### Status

```
zenwebserver status [-v]
```

## Start, Stop, and Restart

```
zenwebserver {stop|start|restart} [-v] [Targets]
```

## Manage the Number of Zope Servers

```
zenwebserver deploy {n|-n|+n}
```

### Examples:

- `zenwebserver deploy 5` # Ensures that exactly 5 Zope servers are running.
- `zenwebserver deploy +1` # Deploys one additional Zope server, regardless of the current number.
- `zenwebserver deploy -3` # Destroys up to 3 Zope servers (as long as the minimum of 1 is maintained).

## Manage the Server Pool

```
zenwebserver {attach|detach} Targets
```

Detaching a target is useful when you want to isolate a Zope server and access it via its direct port to ensure that your requests are the only ones being handled by that server.

## Start an Independent Instance

```
zenwebserver debug
```

## 61.4.5. Configuring the Load Balancer

The load balancer configuration file (`nginx.conf`) is generated from the template in `$ZENHOME/etc/nginx.conf.template`. This template includes a number of variables that can be substituted by providing values in the `zenwebserver.conf` file.

Custom configurations also can be included in the `http` and `server` blocks of the `nginx` configuration. By default, configuration files in `$ZENHOME/etc` are included if they match one of these patterns:

- `nginx-custom-http-*.conf`
- `nginx-custom-server-*.conf`

Values that can be substituted are:

- Number of `worker_processes` for `nginx` to use

```
#worker_processes 4
```

- Paths for `nginx` var directories

```
#proxy_cache_path $ZENHOME/var/nginx/cache
#proxy_temp_path $ZENHOME/var/nginx/tmp/proxy
#client_body_temp_path $ZENHOME/var/nginx/tmp/client_body
```

- Custom includes, which include any configuration files that match the pattern.

- `customHttpInclude` allows configurations to be added to the `http` block in the `nginx` configuration:

```
#customHttpInclude $ZENHOME/etc/nginx-custom-http-*.conf
```

- `customServerInclude` allows configurations to be added to the `server` block in the `nginx` configuration:

```
#customServerInclude $ZENHOME/etc/nginx-custom-server-*.conf
```

- Default error log level

```
#error_log_level warn
```

---

# Chapter 62. Web-Based Synthetic Transactions

## 62.1. About

The ZenWebTx ZenPack allows you to test the availability and performance of Web sites by performing some of the same activities performed by your user community. You create one or more tests that mimic user actions in a Web browser. Resource Manager then performs these tests periodically, creating events when a test fails or exceeds a time threshold.

Additionally, Resource Manager can record data for each test run, such as:

- Time required for the test to execute
- Time taken for any portion of the test to complete
- Values extracted from Web pages during the test

ZenWebTx uses a scripting language called Twill to describe the steps of a test. These steps include actions such as:

- Clicking a link
- Completing form fields
- Assertions, which check for the presence or absence of text on a page. In addition, you can extract data from the Web page and record the numeric values that are a part of these patterns
- Descriptions of data to collect during the test

You can write Twill commands manually. You also can use a Firefox add-on called TestGen4Web to record a browser session that ZenWebTx then translates into Twill commands. The **zenwebtx** daemon processes the Twill commands periodically, recording data and creating events as appropriate.

### 62.1.1. Data Points

Data produced by any Resource Manager data source are called data points. `WebTx` data sources contain two default data points:

- **totalTime** – Number of seconds taken to complete the entire transaction.
- **success** – Returns 1 (success) or 0 (failure), depending on whether or not the transaction succeeded.

You can create other data points by using the `extract` and `printTimer` twill commands, which output data values when the twill commands are run. You must create new data points with the same name you used in those commands to bring that data into Resource Manager. For more information about the `extract` and `printTimer` twill commands, refer to the appendix titled Appendix A, *twill Commands Reference*.

ZenWebTx supports using XPath queries to extract data from XML documents. For more information about this feature, refer to the appendix in this guide titled Appendix A, *twill Commands Reference*.

### 62.1.2. Event Generation

There are several situations for which ZenWebTx will create events in Resource Manager. These events use the component and event class specified on the Data Source tab. These situations are:

- ZenWebTx is unable to retrieve a page during the transaction.
- One of the twill commands fails, such as finding text that does not exist or following a link that does not exist.
- The timeout (specified on the Data Source tab) is exceeded.

- A threshold defined for one of the data points in this data source is exceeded. Thresholds are defined in the monitoring template that contains the data source.


## 62.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWebTx

Table 62.1. Web Transactions Prerequisites

## 62.3. Enable Monitoring

To create a `webTx` data source:

1. From the data sources area, click  (Add Data Source).
2. In the Create Data Source dialog, enter the name of the new data source, and then select the data source type `webTx`.
3. Click **Submit**.
4. Select the data source to edit it. Enter information or make selections to specify how and when this data source's Web transactions are performed, and which data should be collected:

Option	Description
Name	Displays the name of the data source that you specified in the Create Data Source dialog. This name is used in thresholds and graph definitions to refer to the data collected by this data source.
Source Type	Set to <code>webTx</code> , indicating that this is a synthetic Web transaction data source. You cannot edit this selection.
Enabled	Set to True (the default) to collect information from this data source. You may want to set this value to False to disable data sources when developing the data source, or when making changes to the Web application being tested.
Component	Any time the Web transaction fails, Resource Manager generates an event. Use this field to set the Component field of the generated event.
Event Class	Select the event class of the event generated by this data source. Normally, this is set to <code>/Status/Web</code> (according to the value set on the data source).
Timeout	Specify the number of seconds that <code>zenwebtx</code> will attempt to execute this data source's commands before it generates an error event.
Cycle Time	Specify the number of seconds that <code>zenwebtx</code> will wait between the start of one test run and the start of the next.
User Agent	Specify the text that <code>zenwebtx</code> will present to target Web sites to identify itself.

Table 62.2. WebTx Data Source Options

5. Click **Save** to save the specified settings.
6. Select Script. From here, you will specify the details of the transaction. Information here also helps you debug twill commands when setting up the data source.



Enter information or make selections:

Option	Description
Initial URL	Specify the URL of the page where the transaction will start. This field frequently contains a TALES expression to refer to a device's ID or IP address, such as <code>http://\${dev/id}</code> or <code>http://\${dev/manageIp}</code> .  For more information on TALES expressions, refer to the Appendix in the Administration Guide titled TALES Expressions.
Initial User	Specify the user name for authentication.
Initial Password	Specify the user password for authentication.
Initial Authentication Realm	Specify the basic HTTP authentication realm.
TestDevice	Use this field to test and debug twill commands. Enter the ID of a device, and then click <b>Test Twill Commands</b> to execute the twill commands against the device. If you do not specify a device, then Resource Manager will select a device for you.
Upload Recording	Upload a Web session recording generated by the Firefox TestGen4Web add-on. Enter or browse to the recording location.  If you specify a file here, and then click <b>Save</b> , Resource Manager translates the file to twill commands and replaces the contents of the Twill Commands field with the newly translated commands.
Twill Commands	Specify the number of seconds that zenwebtx will wait between the start of one test run and the start of the next.  Enter twill commands that Resource Manager will execute to produce values and events for the data source.  If you select this action, then the current contents of the Twill Commands field is completely replaced. Resource Manager does not save the replaced information.  See the Section 62.4, "Creating twill Commands" section for more information about twill commands.

Table 62.3. WebTx Script Settings

**Note**

If you provide values for Initial User, Initial Password, and Initial Authentication Realm, Resource Manager will use these credentials before accessing the URL specified for Initial URL. All three (Initial User, Initial Password, and Initial Authentication Realm) must be present; otherwise, the values are ignored.

7. Click **Save** to save the data source.

## 62.4. Creating twill Commands

ZenWebTx uses a language called twill to specify the steps of a Web test. Each `WebTx` data source has a field that contains the twill commands that describe a Web transaction. You can create this list of twill commands manually, or you can record a session in a browser and use that as the basis for your data source.

Some twill commands specify an action, such as following a specific link on a page or entering data in a form field. Other twill commands specify a test, such as searching for specific text on a page or making sure the title

does not contain specific text. The full range of available commands is described in the appendix Appendix A, *twill Commands Reference*.

### 62.4.1. Creating twill Commands from TestGen4Web

The TestGen4Web Firefox add-on allows you to record browser sessions. ZenWebTx can take these sessions and convert them to twill, creating a starting point for developing ZenWebTx data sources.

Follow these general steps to record and convert a TestGen4Web session:

1. From the TestGen4Web toolbar in Firefox, use the **Record** and **Stop** buttons to record a session.
2. Use the **Save** button in the toolbar to save the session to a file.
3. From the Script page of a ZenWebTx data source in Resource Manager, browse to and select your saved session.
4. Click **Save** to convert the TestGen4Web session to twill. The newly converted commands appear in the Twill Commands field on the page, replacing any previous twill commands in that area.

### 62.4.2. Creating twill Commands Manually

Even if you use TestGen4Web to initially create twill commands, you will frequently want to edit these commands manually to add data points or additional content checks. The Appendix A, *twill Commands Reference* describes in detail the commands that you can use. The Test Twill Commands button on the Script page is helpful when testing twill commands as you create or edit them.

You also can execute twill commands interactively by using the **twill-sh** program from the command line. This program lets you enter commands one at a time and then inspect the pages that come back.

Invoke twill-sh with:

```
> PYTHONPATH=$ZENHOME/Products/ZenWebTx/lib
$ZENHOME/Products/ZenWebTx/bin/twill-sh
```

Within twill-sh, use the help command to list available commands and see a command descriptions. Of particular interest are these commands:

- **showforms** – Lists the forms on the page and the fields within each.
- **showlinks** – Lists the links on the page.
- **show** – Lists the source HTML from the page.
- **exit** – Quits the twill-sh program.

Often the most convenient way to use twill-sh is to create a text file that contains your twill commands. You can then specify that file on the command line when you invoke twill-sh. This lets you analyze problems that occur.

Invoke twill-sh with a text file as such:

```
> PYTHONPATH=$ZENHOME/Products/ZenWebTx/lib
$ZENHOME/Products/ZenWebTx/bin/twill-sh -i myTwillCommands.txt
```

The **-i** option instructs twill-sh to stay in the twill shell rather than exiting when it finishes running the commands in the `myTwillCommands.txt` file.

## 62.5. Monitoring through Proxy Servers

ZenWebTx can access Web servers through HTTP proxy servers and non-authenticating HTTPS proxy servers.

To configure ZenWebTx to use a proxy, you must define the `http_proxy` and `https_proxy` environment variables.

1. Open the `~zenoss/.bashrc` file.
2. Add the following lines:

```
export http_proxy=http://Address:Port/
export https_proxy=http://Address:Port/
```

where *Address* is the address of your HTTP or HTTPS proxy server, and *Port* is the port on which your proxy server listens.

### 62.5.1. Example Proxy Setup

HTTP and HTTPS proxies frequently listen on port 3128. If your proxy server is "my.proxyserver.loc" and it uses port 3128, then add these two lines to the `~zenoss/.bashrc` file:

```
export http_proxy=http://my.proxyserver.loc:3128/
export https_proxy=http://my.proxyserver.loc:3128/
```

### 62.5.2. Testing the Proxy Setup

You can test the proxy setup by using the `twill-sh` tool. `twill-sh` is an interpreter shell for the `twill` scripting language, which is used to define `WebTx` data sources.

After setting up the proxy information in the `~zenoss/.bashrc` file, follow these steps to test your setup:

1. Make sure `http_proxy` and `https_proxy` are defined in your current shell:

```
$ source ~zenoss/.bashrc
```

2. Launch the `twill` shell:

```
PYTHONPATH=$PYTHONPATH:\
$ZENHOME/ZenPacks/ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWebTx/ZenPacks/zenoss/ZenWebTx/lib:\
$ZENHOME/ZenPacks/ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWebTx/ZenPacks/zenoss/ZenWebTx/bin/twill-sh
```

3. Try to retrieve a URL through HTTP or HTTPS. For example, to retrieve the Resource Manager home page, enter:

```
go http://www.zenoss.com
```

You should see a message similar to this:

```
current page: http://www.zenoss.com
```

If an error message appears, then your proxy may not be correctly configured in the `~zenoss/.bashrc` file.

4. Exit the `twill` shell:

```
exit
```

## 62.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	zenwebtx

Table 62.4. Daemons

---

# Chapter 63. Windows Performance

## 63.1. About

The ZenWinPerf ZenPack allows you to monitor the performance of Windows servers without relying on an intermediary Windows server to collect the data. ZenWinPerf provides the `winPerf` data source, which uses a Windows performance counter (rather than an SNMP OID) to specify the value to collect.

For more information on Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), please see this Microsoft Technet Article.

Name	Description
<code>zenwin</code>	Watches Windows services and reports on status.
<code>zeneventlog</code>	Watches the Windows event log and generates events.
<code>zenwinperf</code>	Collects performance data.
<code>zenmodeler</code>	Models Windows devices. Has SNMP and WMI support.

Table 63.1. Windows Monitoring Daemons

## 63.2. Prerequisites

Supported OS versions are:

- Windows XP
- Windows 2000
- Windows 2003
- Windows Vista
- Windows 2008

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.3 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.WinModelerPlugins, ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenWinPerf, ZenPacks.zenoss.EnterpriseCollector

Table 63.2. Windows Performance Monitoring Prerequisites

## 63.3. Enable Monitoring

### 63.3.1. Defining Windows Credentials

A connection to a Windows device cannot be established without a valid set of credentials. The `zWinUser` and `zWinPassword` configuration properties can be set for each device or for an entire device class.

#### Tip

The user needs to be a member of the local administrators or of the domain administrators group unless the steps in Section 63.8, “Configuring a Standalone Windows Device for a Non-Administrative Account” are followed.

To set these configuration properties:

1. Navigate to the device or device class in the Resource Manager interface.
  - If applying changes to a device class:

- a. Select the class in the devices hierarchy.
  - b. Click **Details**.
  - c. Select Configuration Properties.
  - If applying changes to a device:
    - a. Click the device in the device list.
    - b. Select Configuration Properties.
2. Edit appropriate configuration properties for the device or devices.

Name	Description
zWinUser	Windows user with privileges to gather performance information. Like all Windows credentials, the domain should be specified in the <code>zWinUser</code> entry. Use <code>.\username</code> for an account that is not in the domain but only on the local computer.
zWinPassword	Password for the above user.

Table 63.3. Windows Performance Configuration Properties

3. Click Save to save your changes.

### 63.3.2. Add Devices in Resource Manager

The ZenWinPerf ZenPack includes a `/Device/Server/Windows/WMI` class that has several device templates bound. SNMP data collection is not used in this class.

To move a device to the `/Device/Server/Windows/WMI` class:

1. Select the device row in the devices list.
2. Drag the device to the class in the devices hierarchy.

## 63.4. Monitor Other Performance Counters

To create your own `winPerf` data sources, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to a new or existing monitoring template, and select New DataSource from the Data Sources table menu.
2. Enter a name for the data source, select WinPerf as the type and then click OK.
3. Enter a Windows performance counter in the Perf Counter field. See Windows Perfmon counters for more details.
4. Click **Save**. Notice that a data point is created with the same name as the performance counter you selected.
5. Optionally, test the counter by entering a device ID in the Test Device field and clicking the Test button.

## 63.5. Testing Connections from Windows

This procedure verifies that the username/password combination is correct, and that there is no firewall blocking the connection.

1. Run the **wbemtest** command.
2. Click the Connect... button.
3. In the Namespace field, enter:

```
\\HOST\root\cimv2
```

4. Enter login information in the User and Password fields.
5. Click the Query field.

6. Enter the following query to return a dialog with a list of services on the device.

```
select * from win32_service
```

## 63.6. Testing Connections from Resource Manager

This procedure verifies that the username/password combination is correct, and that there is no firewall blocking the connection. Since this is done from the Resource Manager server, this test is a better approximation of how successful Resource Manager will be in connecting to the Windows device.

As the zenoss user on the Resource Manager server:

```
wmic -U 'user' //device 'select * from Win32_computerSystem'
```

The **wmic** command will then prompt you for the password.

## 63.7. Modify Registry Settings for Firewalls in Secure Environments

### Note

This procedure is applicable only for environments with firewalls.

The Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM) dynamically allocates one port to each process. You need to decide how many ports you want to allocate to DCOM processes, which is equivalent to the number of simultaneous DCOM processes through the firewall. You must open all of the UDP and TCP ports corresponding to the port numbers you choose. You also need to open TCP/UDP 135, which is used for RPC End Point Mapping, among other things. In addition, you must edit the registry to tell DCOM which ports you reserved. You do this with the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINES\Software\Microsoft\Rpc\Internet` registry key, which you will probably have to create.

To allow remote registry access for the performance data to be read, see Controlling remote Performance Monitor access to Windows NT servers.

The following table shows the registry settings to restrict DCOMs port range to 10 ports.

Registry Key	Type	Setting
Ports	REG_MULTI_SZ	Range of port. Can be multiple lines such as: 3001-3010 135
PortsInternetAvailable	REG_SZ	Y
UseInternetPorts	REG_SZ	Y

Table 63.4. Firewall and Registry Settings for DCOM

These registry settings must be established in addition to all firewall settings.

## 63.8. Configuring a Standalone Windows Device for a Non-Administrative Account

Monitoring Windows devices normally requires an account with administrator-level privileges. For the Resource Manager user who wants to use a non-administrative account, several additional configuration steps must be performed on each Windows device, or by using a Group Policy.

Resource Manager uses the Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) feature to collect modeling information. The remote Windows registry API also is used to collect low-level performance monitor ("PerfMon") statistics. Both of these Windows sub-systems use the Microsoft Remote Procedure Call (MS-RPC) interface to connect to the Windows device and gather the appropriate information. MS-RPC handles the authentication on a per-packet or per-session basis, but ultimately the access granted is determined by the sub-systems involved with serving the remote procedure calls.

1. If the Windows firewall is in use, modify it to allow Remote Administration access. This will open the MS-RPC port and others as needed. Enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
netsh firewall set service RemoteAdmin enable
```

2. On Windows XP, Simple File Sharing must be disabled for machines that are not located within a Domain. When this feature is enabled it causes all incoming MS-RPC connections to use the built-in Guest account, rather than the account credentials specified in the incoming call. This option may be found by going to Control Panel, opening the Folder Options applet and then choosing the View tab. In the Advanced Settings list, locate the Use simple file sharing (Recommended) option, and then disable it.

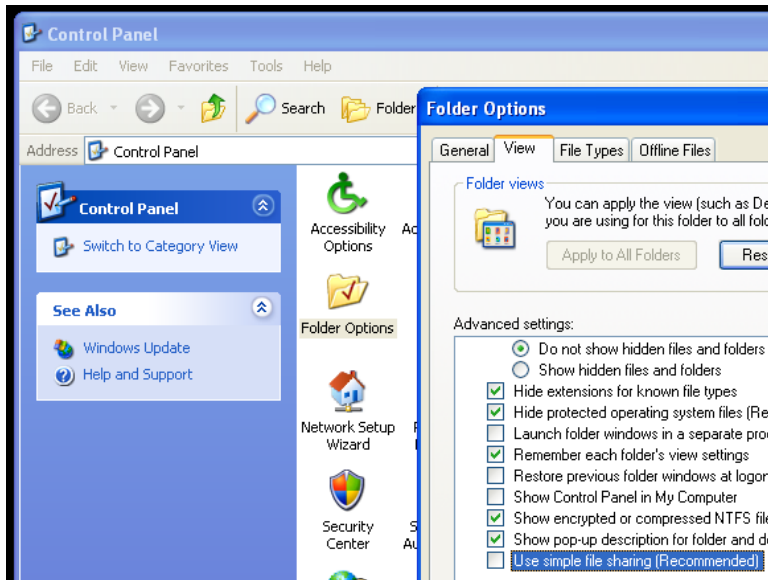


Figure 63.1. Windows XP Disable Simple File Sharing

3. Create a local account on the Windows device for monitoring. We assume in the remainder of these steps that this account was named `zenossmom` but any valid account name can be used. Place the account only in the Users group and not in the Power Users or Administrators groups. Optionally, create a new user group for monitoring and use that group instead of the account in the remaining steps.
4. Give the `zenossmom` account DCOM access by running the `dcomcnfg` utility.

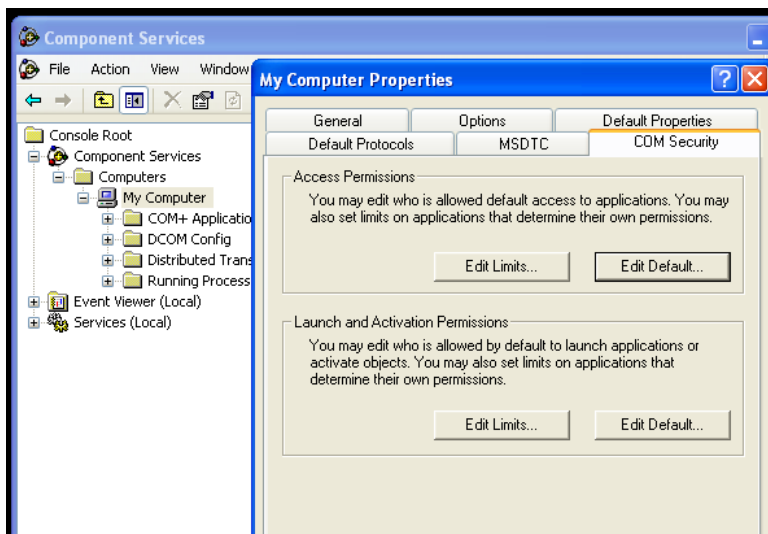


Figure 63.2. Component Services COM Security Settings

- a. In the Component Services dialog box, expand Component Services, expand Computers, and then right-click My Computer and click Properties .

- b. In the My Computer Properties dialog box, click the COM Security tab.
  - c. Under Access Permissions, click Edit Limits. In the Access Permission dialog box, add the `zenossmom` account to the list and ensure that the Remote Access checkbox is enabled, then click OK to close the dialog.
  - d. Under Launch and Activation Permissions, click Edit Limits. In the Access Permission dialog box, add the `zenossmom` account to the list and ensure that the Remote Launch and Remote Activation checkboxes are enabled, then click OK to close the dialog.
  - e. Click OK on the My Computer Properties dialog to save all changes.
5. Give the `zenossmom` account permissions to read the WMI namespace by using WMI Control.

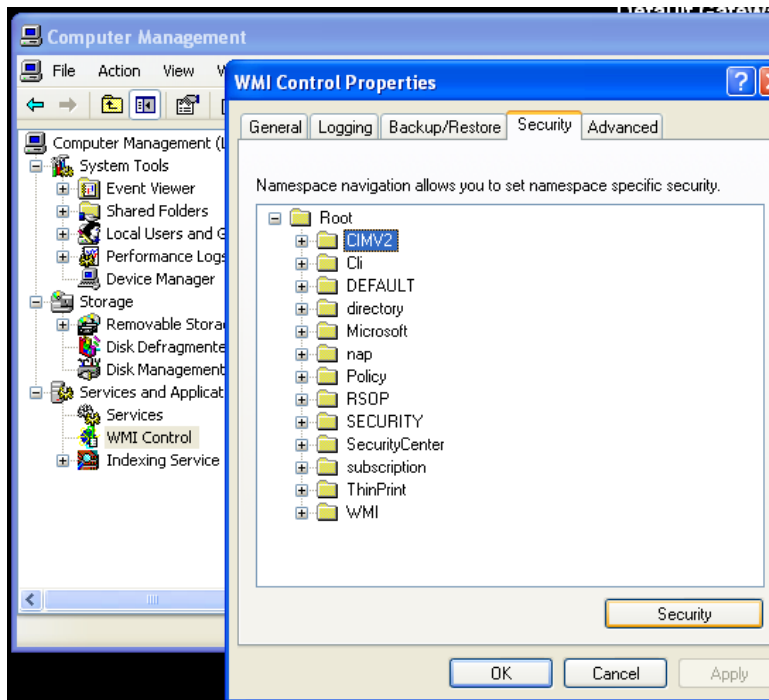


Figure 63.3. WMI Control Properties

- a. Open the Start menu and right-click on My Computer. Select Manage from the menu.
  - b. In the Computer Management dialog, expand the Services and Applications item and then right-click on WMI Control.
  - c. In the WMI Control Properties dialog, click the Security tab.
  - d. Expand the Root namespace, select the CIMV2 namespace folder and then click Security.
  - e. In the Security for ROOT\CIMV2 dialog, add the `zenossmom` user to the list and ensure the Enable Account and Remote Enable checkboxes are enabled, then click OK to close the dialog.
  - f. In the WMI Control Properties dialog click OK to close the dialog and save all changes.
6. At this point in the process remote access to WMI should be enabled and functioning. Test it by running the following command from the Resource Manager server:

```
wmic -U '.\zenossmom' //myhostname 'SELECT Name FROM Win32_ComputerSystem'
```

If all is well this command should return the remote system name as the response. If there is any error, carefully recheck the above steps to ensure all access has been properly granted.

7. To gather Windows performance data from PerfMon permissions on the `winreg` registry key must be granted to our monitoring user by using **regedit**.



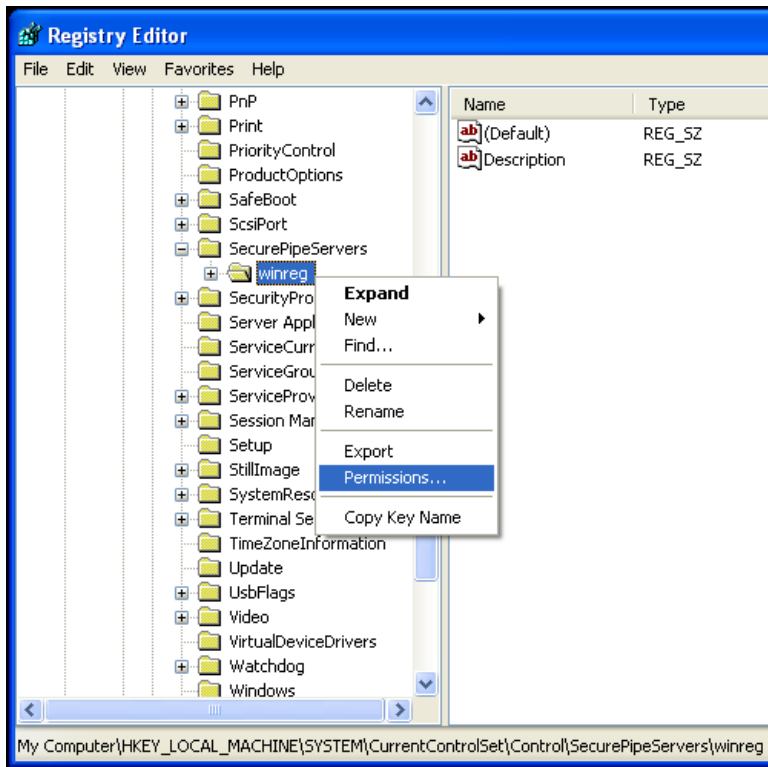


Figure 63.4. regedit and the winreg Key

- a. Run **regedit**.
  - b. Browse to the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\SecurePipeServers\winreg` key.
  - c. Right-click on the `winreg` key and choose Permissions.
  - d. Add the monitoring user to the permissions list and grant only `Read` permissions
8. Give the `zenossmom` account access to read the Windows Event Log.

Once the appropriate changes are made, test that Event Log access works with your `zenossmom` user. Run the following from your Resource Manager system:

```
wmic -U '.\zenossmom' //myhostname \
'SELECT Message FROM Win32_NTLogEvent WHERE LogFile="Application"'
```

9. If you are using SP1 or newer with Windows Server 2003, then you must allow non-administrative users to access the service control manager to monitor services.

At a command prompt, run the following:

```
sc sdset SCMANAGER
D: (A;CCLCRP; ;AU) (A;CCLCRPWPR; ;SY) (A;KA; ;BA)S: (AU;FA;KA; ;WD)
(AU;OIIOFA;GA; ;WD)
```

### Warning

The above command should be one line.

At this point you should be able to query Windows service status remotely by using the non-administrative account. Test this by running the following command from your Resource Manager system:

```
wmic -U '.\zenossmom' //myhostname 'SELECT Name FROM Win32_Service'
```

## 63.9. Tuning Collector Daemon Performance

ZenWinPerf creates several configuration properties that control its behavior. Values for the configuration properties are initially set on the `/Devices` device class. As with any property, these values can be overridden in other device classes and on individual devices themselves.

Property	Setting
<code>zWinPerfCycleSeconds</code>	This is how frequently (in seconds) <b>zewinperf</b> data sources are collected. By default this is set to 300 seconds.

Table 63.5. *zenwinperf* Daemon Configuration Properties

## 63.10. Multiple Workers

ZenWinPerf supports multiple workers. This feature allows you to support data collection from more Windows devices without defining additional collectors to host additional ZenWinPerf daemons. The multiple workers feature is enabled by a configuration option:

**--workers** - Runs ZenWinPerf in a multi-worker setup. By default, set to a value of 2.

## 63.11. Enabling the NTLMv2 Authentication Protocol

To enable the NTLMv2 authentication protocol for all Windows devices of a `zenwin`, `zenwinperf`, or `zenevent` log collector, update collector configuration files:

Alternatively, from the command line add:

```
--ntlmv2auth
```

```
# Enable NTLMv2 authentication for Windows
# Devices, default: False
#ntlmv2auth False
```

---

# Chapter 64. ZenOperator Role

## 64.1. About

The ZenOperatorRole ZenPack creates a new role (`zenOperator`) suitable for use in Resource Manager. For more information about using this role, please see the *Resource Manager Administration* section titled "Roles" in the chapter titled "Managing Users."

## 64.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.x, Zenoss 2.2 or higher
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.ZenOperatorRole

Table 64.1. Zen Operator Role Prerequisites

---

# Chapter 65. ZenTune

## 65.1. About

The AutoTune ZenPack enables the ZenTune "tuning advisor" feature in Resource Manager. ZenTune analyzes your system configuration and makes recommendations for better performance.

This ZenPack is installed when you install Resource Manager.

## 65.2. Prerequisites

Prerequisite	Restriction
Product	Resource Manager 4.2
Required ZenPacks	ZenPacks.zenoss.AutoTune

Table 65.1. Prerequisites

## 65.3. Configuring ZenTune

You can set values for several options in the `zentune.conf` configuration file (or when running ZenTune from the command line) to configure behavior.

ZenTune can perform an analysis one or more times each day, depending on the values of these two options:

- `tune-offset Value` -- Sets the number of minutes after midnight when the ZenTune will first run. By default, the value is 0.
- `tune-interval Value` -- Sets the number of minutes to wait before running ZenTune again. By default, the value is 0, which is equivalent to 1440 (24 hours).

So, for example, if you want ZenTune to run twice each day, set the value of `tune-offset` to 0 and the value of `tune-interval` to 720.

### 65.3.1. Configuring ZenTune for Remote Databases

If you have installed the Zenoss DataStore on a server other than your master server, then you must set additional configuration options. Set the following options in the `$ZENHOME/etc/zentune.conf` file of the master server:

Option	Description
<code>mysqltuner-zodb-forcemem</code> <i>MegaBytes</i>	Sets the amount of memory available on the server running the ZODB database server.
<code>mysqltuner-zep-forcemem</code> <i>MegaBytes</i>	Sets the amount of memory available on the server running the ZEP database server.

Table 65.2. Remote Database Configuration Options

## 65.4. Using ZenTune

To access ZenTune, select Advanced > Tuning from the Resource Manager interface.

Severity	Host	Description	Group	Acknowledge
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Start the memcached daemon	Zope	<input type="checkbox"/>
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Upgrade RabbitMQ to version 2.8.1	rabbitmq	<input type="checkbox"/>
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Set cache-size to 20000	Zope	<input type="checkbox"/>
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Set python-check-interval to 1516	Zope	<input type="checkbox"/>
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Set zodb-cachesize to a value no less than 5000	Events	<input type="checkbox"/>
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Move zenhub and/or zeneventd daemons to another server	Resources	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 65.1. ZenTune

To run ZenTune, click **Update** (located at the bottom left of the page). ZenTune may require several minutes to run.

### Note

To check the update status, refresh the browser page and then check the "Update at" value for any watched items.

ZenTune returns information about current and optimal values for several configuration parameters. Click + to the left of each item to display recommendations, if any, for configuration changes.

Severity	Host	Description
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Start the memcached daemon
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Upgrade RabbitMQ to version 2.8.1
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Set cache-size to 20000
	t-cent5a-64.zenoss.loc	Set python-check-interval to 1516

**Name:** Object cache **Group:** Zope

**Description:**

The cache-size setting (5000) is at 25% of the recommended value (20000)

**Updated at:** Mon Apr 09 2012 23:00:00 GMT-0500 (CDT)

Figure 65.2. ZenTune Issue Detail

To refresh the view, click **Refresh**. (This does not run ZenTune again.)

To filter the list of displayed items, select Not Acknowledged, Acknowledged, or both in the Acknowledge column. To acknowledge one or more items, select the option in the Acknowledge column.

You also can filter the display by severity, host, and description.

### 65.4.1. Running ZenTune from the Command Line

You can run ZenTune from the command line. On the master server, use the command:

```
zentune run
```

To run ZenTune on a remote hub or collector, prefix the command with the name of the hub or collector, followed by an underscore. For example, if the remote collector name is `centos5-coll`, then run the command as:

```
centos5-coll_zentune run
```

This generates a report to the console output. If you additionally specify the `--events` option, events are instead issued (the same events issued by the `zentune` daemon). The results appear on the Tuning page of the Resource Manager interface.

## 65.5. Tuneable Items

The following table lists included tuneable items.

Name	Group	Description
zeneventd workers	Events	<p>ZenTune monitors the number of incoming events to the <code>zeneventd</code> daemon. If the number of incoming events exceeds the configured threshold per worker, then a tuning event is generated. If the threshold is exceeded only during peak load times, a <b>WARNING</b> severity tuning event is generated. If it is exceeded more often, an <b>ERROR</b> severity tuning event is generated.</p> <p>The threshold checked is controlled by these configuration options on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>zeneventd-worker-events-per-second</code></li> <li><code>zeneventd-worker-count-max-recommended</code></li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about each of these options, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre>
zeneventserver	Events	
zeneventserver age-eligible events	Events	
zeneventserver archive-eligible events	Events	
zeneventserver processed events	Events	
zeneventserver deduped events	Events	
zeneventserver dropped events	Events	
zeneventserver cleared events	Events	
zeneventserver archived events	Events	
zeneventserver aged events	Events	

Name	Group	Description
zeneventserver summary queue length	Events	
zeneventserver archive queue length	Events	
zeneventserver summary index size	Events	
zeneventserver archive index size	Events	
zeneventserver summary index doc count	Events	
zeneventserver archive index doc count	Events	
age eligible event count	Events	
archive eligible event count	Events	
zeneventserver summary queue length	Events	
zeneventserver archive queue length	Events	
zeneventd object cache	Global	<p>The zeneventd zodb-cachesize configuration setting controls the number of objects that zeneventd will store locally to avoid querying ZODB. Resource Manager expects this value to be between certain thresholds, proportional to the size of the global catalog. If any of these thresholds are violated, then a WARNING or ERROR severity tuning event is generated, depending on the configured thresholds.</p> <p>The thresholds checked are controlled by the following configuration options on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>zeneventd-obj-cache-bad</code></li> <li>• <code>zeneventd-obj-cache-warn</code></li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about each of these options, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre>
ZODB cache servers	Global	<p>Resource Manager expects at least one memcached server to be configured for its use as a ZODB cache. If this is not the case, then an ERROR severity tuning event is generated.</p> <p>Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that con-</p>

Name	Group	Description
		<p>nect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p> <p>More information on memcached can be found here:  <a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
globalConfig	Global	
Global config sip size	Global	The configsize global configuration setting controls the number of device configuration objects that a collector daemon will receive in a single request. A setting of 0 implies that all device configurations will be requested at once. Combined with the configdelay option, this effectively controls the traffic to collector daemons.
Global config sip delay	Global	The configdelay global configuration setting controls the number of seconds between requests for device configuration objects that a collector daemon will make. Combined with the configsize option, this effectively controls the traffic to collector daemons.
Event flush chunk size	Global	The eventflushchunksize global configuration setting controls the number of events a collector daemon will send to zenhub at one time. Each collector daemon will periodically flush its outgoing event queue and send events to zenhub until the queue is empty.
Maximum queue length	Global	The maxqueue length global configuration setting controls the number of events a collector daemon can store in its outgoing event queue before it must start dropping events.
IO CPU Wait Time	IO	<p>ZenTune monitors iostat statistics, and if any device causes wait times exceeding the configured threshold in more than 5% of cases, then an ERROR severity tuning event is generated. The threshold checked is controlled by the following configuration option on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>iostat-wait-threshold</code></li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about each of these options, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre> <p>The <code>iostat</code> utility is a third-party program that provides statistics on the time the CPU spends waiting for I/O requests from various devices. More information on <code>iostat</code> can be found here:  <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/iostat">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/iostat</a></p>
Cache miss percentage	Memcached	<p>Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that connect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p> <p>More information on memcached can be found here:  <a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
Maximum size	Memcached	Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that con-



Name	Group	Description
		<p>nect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p> <p>More information on memcached can be found here:  <a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
Cache eviction rate	Memcached	<p>Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that connect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p> <p>More information on memcached can be found here:  <a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
Cache servers	Memcached	<p>Resource Manager expects at least one memcached server to be configured for its use. If this is not the case, then an INFO severity tuning event is generated. Resource Manager also expects all configured memcached servers to be available and responding to connection attempts using the standard memcached client. If this is not the case, then an ERROR severity tuning event is generated.</p> <p>Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that connect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p> <p>More information on memcached can be found here:  <a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
Cache size	Memcached	<p>Resource Manager expects the use of each memcached server to conform to certain performance thresholds. Specifically, the utilization level and eviction rate of each memcached server are checked. If any of these thresholds are violated, then a WARNING or ERROR severity tuning event is generated, depending on the configured thresholds. The thresholds checked are controlled by the following configuration options on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>memcache-size-high-warn</code></li> <li>• <code>memcache-size-high-bad</code></li> <li>• <code>memcache-size-low-warn</code></li> <li>• <code>memcache-size-low-bad</code></li> <li>• <code>memcache-size-evictions-warn</code></li> <li>• <code>memcache-size-evictions-bad</code></li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about each of these options, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre> <p>Memcached is a third-party object caching system used by Resource Manager to improve performance for daemons that connect to Zope and ZODB. It is not required for Resource Manager to function, but it is highly recommended.</p>

Name	Group	Description
		<p>More information on memcached can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://memcached.org/">http://memcached.org/</a></p>
MySqlTuner script	Resources	<p>ZenTune expects the <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> utility to be installed and available for its use to enable more detailed tuning advice. The <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> utility is a third-party tuning script that provides advanced statistics on MySQL. More information on <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://mysqltuner.pl/help">http://mysqltuner.pl/help</a></p> <p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p>
iostat Utility	Resources	<p>ZenTune expects the <code>iostat</code> utility to be installed and available for its use to enable more detailed tuning advice. The <code>iostat</code> utility is a third-party program that provides statistics on the time the CPU spends waiting for I/O requests from various devices. More information on <code>iostat</code> can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iostat">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iostat</a></p>
Memory	Resources	<p>This tuning item provides information about the total amount of RAM installed in the Resource Manager master server.</p>
Processes	Resources	<p>This tuning item provides advice on the distribution of CPU-intensive Resource Manager processes according to the number of cores available on the Resource Manager server. If any of the thresholds are violated, a WARNING or ERROR severity tuning event will be generated, depending on the configured thresholds. The thresholds checked are controlled by the following configuration options on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>resources-available-cores-warn</li> <li>resources-available-cores-bad</li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about each of these options, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre>
MySQL Version	MySQL Database	<p>Resource Manager expects that at least a specific, minimum version of MySQL is installed and available for its use. Earlier versions may not support all the features that Resource Manager requires, or may have hidden incompatibilities. If this minimum threshold is violated, then an ERROR severity tuning event is generated, depending on the configured threshold. The threshold checked is controlled by the following configuration option on the <code>zentune</code> daemon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>mysql-recommended-version</li> </ul> <p>For detailed information about this option, run this command on any Resource Manager server:</p> <pre>zentune run --help</pre>

Name	Group	Description
		<p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p>
InnoDB buffer pool size	MySQL Database	<p>If the <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> script recommends increasing the amount of memory available to InnoDB, then an ERROR level tuning event is generated. More information on the <code>innodb_buffer_pool_size</code> configuration setting can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.5/en/innodb-parameters.html#sysvar_innodb_buffer_pool_size">http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.5/en/innodb-parameters.html#sysvar_innodb_buffer_pool_size</a></p> <p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p>
Table sizes	MySQL Database	<p>This tuning item provides information about the total size and number of tables in each MySQL instance configured for Resource Manager. MySQL is a third-party open-source relational database. Zenoss uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here: <a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p> <p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p>
Table fragmentation	MySQL Database	<p>If the <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> script recommends de-fragmenting the tables in a MySQL instance, then an ERROR level tuning event is generated.</p> <p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p> <p><a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a></p>
Thread cache	MySQL Database	<p>If the <code>mysqltuner.pl</code> script recommends increasing the number of threads cached for reuse by MySQL, then an ERROR level tuning event will be generated. More information on the <code>thread_cache_size</code> configuration setting can be found here: <a href="http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.5/en/server-system-variables.html#sysvar_thread_cache_size">http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.5/en/server-system-variables.html#sysvar_thread_cache_size</a></p> <p>MySQL is a third-party, open-source relational database. Resource Manager uses MySQL as the backing data store for ZODB, as well as directly to store events and user sessions. More information on MySQL can be found here:</p>

Name	Group	Description
		<a href="http://www.mysql.com/">http://www.mysql.com/</a>
Version	rabbitmq	
Hub	Hubs	
zenhub workers	Hubs	
Check interval	Zope	
Object cache	Zope	
RelStorage cache	Zope	
Pool size	Zope	
Cache servers	Zope	
Maximum number of session objects	Zope	
Debug mode	Zope	
Application server processes	Zope	
Application server threads	Zope	
Request latency	Zope	

Table 65.3. Tuneable Items

## 65.6. Daemons

Type	Name
Performance Collector	<b>zentune</b>

Table 65.4. Daemons

---

# Appendix A. twill Commands Reference

## A.1. About

twill is the language used by ZenWebTx to simulate user actions in a Web browser and to test pages retrieved by the simulation. The following sections list the twill commands available for use in ZenWebTx data sources.

### Note

For detailed information about ZenWebTx, see the chapter titled Chapter 62, *Web-Based Synthetic Transactions*.

Some twill commands produce text output (see the section titled Section A.4, “Display”). These commands do not affect the execution of tests by ZenWebTx, and are useful in testing and debugging ZenWebTx data sources.

To see the output of commands that produce text output, click **Test Twill Commands** on the Script page of a ZenWebTx data source.

Twill commands are divided among the following categories:

- Browsing
- Assertions
- Display
- Forms
- Cookies
- Debugging
- Other commands

## A.2. Browsing

- **go** <URL> - Visit the given URL.
- **back** - Return to the previous URL.
- **reload** - Reload the current URL.
- **follow** <link name> - Follow a link on the current page.

## A.3. Assertions

- **code** <code> - Assert that the last page loaded had this HTTP status. For example, ``code 200`` asserts that the page loaded correctly.
- **find** <regexp> - Assert that the page contains this regular expression.
- **notfind** <regexp> - Assert that the page does not contain this regular expression.
- **url** <regexp> - Assert that the current URL matches the given regexp.
- **title** <regexp> - Assert that the title of this page matches this regular expression.

## A.4. Display

- **echo** <string> - Echo the string to the screen.
- **redirect\_output** <filename> - Append all Twill output to the given file.
- **reset\_output** - Display all output to the screen.
- **save\_html** [<filename>] - Save the current page's HTML to a file. If no filename is given, derive the filename from the URL.

- **show** - Show the current page's HTML.
- **showlinks** - Show all of the links on the current page.
- **showforms** - Show all of the forms on the current page.
- **showhistory** - Show the browser history.

## A.5. Forms

- **submit** \* [<n>]\* - Click the nth submit button, if given; otherwise, submit via the last submission button clicked. If nothing is clicked, then use the first submit button on the form. See the section titled Details on Form Handling for more information.
- **formvalue** <formnum> <fieldname> <value> - Set the given field in the given form to the given value. For read-only form widgets and controls, the click may be recorded for use by submit, but the value is not changed unless the **config** command has changed the default behavior. See **config** and the section titled "Details on Form Handling" for more information on the **formvalue** command.

For list widgets, you can use one of the following commands to select or de-select a particular value. To select a value, enter the command in this format:

```
formvalue <formnum> <fieldname> +value
```

To de-select a value:

```
formvalue <formnum> <fieldname> -value
```

- **fv** - Abbreviation for the formvalue command.
- **formaction** <formnum> <action> - Change the form action URL to the given URL.
- **fa** - abbreviation for the fa command.
- **formclear** - Clear all values in the form.
- **formfile** <formspec> <fieldspec> <filename> [ <content\_type> ]\* - attach a file to a file upload button by filename.

## A.6. Cookies

- **save\_cookies** <filename> - Save the current cookie jar to a file.
- **load\_cookies** <filename> - Replace the current cookie jar with the specified file contents.
- **clear\_cookies** - Clear all of the current cookies.
- **show\_cookies** - show all of the current cookies. Sometimes useful for debugging.

## A.7. Debugging

**debug** <what> <level> - Turn on or off debugging/tracing for various functions.

Enter the command in the form:

```
debug <what> <level>
```

where <what> is one of these options:

- **HTTP** - Show HTTP headers.
- **equiv-refresh** - Test HTTP EQUIV-REFRESH headers.
- **twill** - Show twill commands.

and <level> is 0 (for off) or 1 (for on).

## A.8. Other Commands

- **tidy\_ok** - Check to see if the **tidy** command runs on this page without any errors or warnings.

- **exit** \* [<code>]\* - Exit with the given integer code, if specified. The value of <code> defaults to 0.
- **run** <command> - Execute the specified Python command.
- **run file** <file1> [ <file2> ... ]\* - Execute the specified files.
- **agent** - Set the browser's "User-agent" string.
- **sleep** [<seconds>] - sleep the given number of seconds. Defaults to 1 second.
- **reset\_browser** - Reset the browser.
- **extend\_with** <module> - Import commands from the specified Python module. This acts like `from <module> import *` does in Python.

For example, a function `fun` in `ext module` would be available as `fun`. See `*examples/extend_example.py*` for an example.

- **add\_auth** <realm> <uri> <user> <password> - Add HTTP Basic Authentication information for the given realm/URL combination.

For example, "add\_auth IdyllStuff http://www.idyll.org/ titus test" tells twill that a request from the authentication realm "IdyllStuff" under http://www.idyll.org/ should be answered with username 'titus', password 'test'. If the 'with\_default\_realm' option is set to True, ignore 'realm'.

- **config** [<key> [<value>]] - Show/set configuration options.
- **add\_extra\_headers** <name> <value> - Add an extra HTTP header to each HTTP request.
- **show\_extra\_headers** - Show the headers being added to each HTTP request.
- **clear\_extra\_headers** - Clear the headers being added to each HTTP request.

## A.9. Details on Form Handling

The **formvalue** (or **fv**) and **submit** commands rely on a certain amount of implicit cleverness to do their work. In odd situations, it is difficult to determine which form field **formvalue** will choose based on your field name, or which form and field **submit** is going to "click" on.

### Example 1

Following is the pseudocode for how **formvalue** and **submit** determine which form to use (function `'twill.commands.browser.get_form'`):

for each form on page:

if supplied regexp pattern matches the form name, select

if no form name, try converting to an integer N & using N-1 as

an index into the list of forms on the page (for example, form 1 is

the first form on the page).

### Example 2

Following is the pseudocode for how **formvalue** and **submit** determine which form field to use (function `'twill.commands.browser.get_form_field'`):

search current form for control name with exact match to fieldname;

if single (unique) match, select.

if no match, convert fieldname into a number and use as an index, if possible.

if no match, search current form for control name with regexp match to fieldname;

if single (unique) match, select.

if *\*still\** no match, look for exact matches to submit-button values.

if single (unique) match, select.

### Example 3

Following is the pseudocode for ``submit``:

if a form was `_not_` previously selected by **formvalue**:

if there is only one form on the page, select it.

otherwise, fail.

if a field is not explicitly named:

if a submit button was "clicked" with **formvalue**, use it.

otherwise, use the first submit button on the form, if any.

otherwise:

find the field using the same rules as **formvalue**

finally, if a button has been picked, submit using it;

otherwise, submit without using a button

## A.10. ZenWebTx Extensions to twill

ZenWebTx adds several commands to the standard twill vocabulary.

### A.10.1. twilltiming

`twilltiming` sets timers in a set of twill commands. If you then define a data point for this timer, you can graph and set thresholds on this timer value.

Use the following command to start a new timer:

```
startTimer myTimerName
```

and then, to output the value:

```
printTimer myTimerName
```

Timer values should be output only once. So, to output the time from the start of the script to more than one point in the script, you must use more than one timer. For example:

```
startTimer wwwZenossCom
startTimer bothPages
go http://www.zenoss.com
printTimer wwwZenossCom
startTimer communityPage
follow "Community"
printTimer communityPage
printTimer bothPages
```

To use these timers in Resource Manager, create data points with the same name as the timers. In this example you could create data points named `wwwZenossCom`, `communityPage`, and `bothPages`. You can then use these data points in Resource Manager thresholds and graph definitions.



## A.10.2. twillextract

twillextract extracts numeric values from Web pages during the transaction. To use twillextract, use the following command to match the given regular expression to the current page:

```
extract <dataName> <regularExpression>
```

The value 1 or 0 is assigned to dataName depending on whether the regular expression matched or not.

Additionally, you can use Python's regular expression substring-matching syntax to extract substrings of the matched text. For example, <http://www.zenoss.com> contains a copyright notice near the bottom that looks like "Copyright (c) 2005-2011 Zenoss, Inc." The following twill commands use a regular expression to grab the second year from that notice:

```
go http://www.zenoss.com
extract copyright "(?P<firstYear>[0-9]*)-(?P<secondYear>[0-9]*) Zenoss, Inc."
```

(?P<name>....) is Python syntax for naming that particular part of the regular expression. The value extracted from that part of the matching text is given the name from the extract command, then a dash, then the name from the sub-pattern. In this example, copyright gets a value of 1 or 0 depending on whether the pattern was found on the page or not, and copyright-firstYear and copyright-secondYear get the values extracted from the matched text. To use these values in Resource Manager you must create data points in the WebTx data source with the same name as those you used in the extract command. In this case you would create data points named copyright, copyright-firstYear and copyright-secondYear. You can then create graph definitions and thresholds for these data points.

## A.10.3. twillxpathextract

Resource Manager uses the twillxpathextract command to extract numeric values from XML documents. To use twillxpathextract, add the following command to match and extract data using the given XPath expression:

```
xpathextract <dataName> <xpath>
```

where xpathextract is the command name, <dataName> is the name of the data point to which the value will map, and <xpath> is the xpath used to retrieve the data.

When applied to an XML document, the XPath expression must return a numeric value. This value is then assigned to the dataName data point.

## A.10.4. ignorescripts

ignorescripts strips javascript from visited pages before they are processed by twill. Although twill ignores script tags, it is possible for scripts to include strings that twill will interpret as HTML tags. Including the command extend\_with ignorescripts near the top of your twill commands will cause all script tags to be stripped, thereby avoiding this issue.